



Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

Linee guide per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

- + *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.
- + *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.
- + *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.
- + *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertarti di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da <http://books.google.com>

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



C. A. S.
Anhar. 2 m. or 8°

Tsenberg.

OTHER WORKS
PRINTED
FOR THE USE OF THE ABYSSINIAN MISSION.

BY REV. C. W. ISENBERG:

AMHARIC SPELLING BOOK. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

AMHARIC CATECHISM. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

AMHARIC GEOGRAPHY. 8vo. 3s. cloth.

HISTORY OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD, in AMHARIC. 8vo.—PART I.

History of the Old Covenant, to the Destruction of Jerusalem, and the Death of St. John.—PART II. History of the Church, from the Death of St. John, to our Times. 8vo. cloth, 16s.

DICTIONARY of the AMHARIC LANGUAGE. 4to. £2.

UNIVERSAL HISTORY in AMHARIC. 8vo. 4s.

VOCABULARY of the DANKALI LANGUAGE. 12mo. 8d.

BY REV. J. L. KRAPF:

ST. MATTHEW'S GOSPEL in the GALLA LANGUAGE. fcp. 8vo. 6d.

ST. JOHN'S GOSPEL, Five Chapters, in the GALLA LANGUAGE. fcp. 8vo. 6d.

GRAMMATICAL OUTLINE of the GALLA LANGUAGE. 12mo. 8d.

WORKS IN THE PRESS:

BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER for the United Church of England and Ireland, in AMHARIC, by Rev. C. W. ISENBERG. 8vo.

VOCABULARY of the GALLA LANGUAGE, by Rev. J. L. KRAPF. 12mo.

G R A M M A R

OF THE

A M H A R I C L A N G U A G E.

BY THE

Rev. CHARLES WILLIAM ISENBERG,

AUTHOR OF THE "AMHARIC DICTIONARY,"

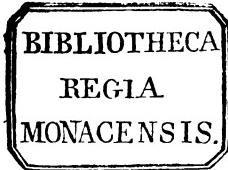
AND MISSIONARY OF THE CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY

IN EAST AFRICA.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR THE CHURCH MISSIONARY SOCIETY.

1842.



P R E F A C E.

IN presenting this work to the Public, the Author offers his humble thanks to God, for having enabled him to accomplish it. He was aware, when he first set his hand to it, not only of its importance with regard to Abyssinia—its character, religion, history, and destinies—but also of the difficulty of the task which he had undertaken. There was previously no Amharic Grammar extant, except Ludolf's*; which, however it attests the superior talents of its author, considering the circumstances under which it was compiled, is but a feeble aid in the grammatical exhibition of the language. Nor was there any other literary source, on which the Author of this Grammar could draw, except the Amharic Bible, and those Amharic works which he himself had prepared. Under these circumstances, he had very often to feel out his way, by a recollection of the living language, in which he conversed with the Abyssinian people while residing among them. This recollection, however, was kept alive by the Author's having been, without interruption, occupied with the Amharic press, from his arrival in this country from Abyssinia up to this day. The preparation and publication of the Lexicon, immediately preceding his commencement of this Grammar, was peculiarly suited to prepare him for this work; for whilst, on the one hand, it laid open to him the whole of the materials of which that language is composed, as far as they are at present known, it furnished him also with ample opportunities to investigate the grammatical rules by which it is regulated. Every one, who has

* See Preface to my Amharic Dictionary.

a judgment in these matters, will discover, when comparing the Dictionary with the Grammar, that the Author's own knowledge of the language has improved as he has advanced in his editorial labours. But although he is aware of the imperfections of his own works, he feels confident that a diligent study of this Grammar will, under the blessing of the Almighty, materially assist any Student in acquiring an accurate knowledge of the Amharic Language.

Although there is, as yet, no literature in the Amharic Language, its study is of considerable importance to Orientalists. Its Semitic origin cannot be questioned : it is evident in every feature. A little attention to what is said in this Grammar on the Nouns and Verbs, shows that it possesses a vigour and flexibility capable of expressing any idea ; and that it may be very useful in throwing light on many subjects of difficulty in the cognate languages, especially the Hebrew, Syriac, and Coptic. Such a language, it is but reasonable to suppose, will be found rich in words. The Dictionary, which gives only those words which we at present possess, contains about 7000 ; and we may anticipate that a longer and more intimate acquaintance with the people of Abyssinia will furnish us with a great many more, and lead to important results, not only in reference to the Semitic, but also to the African Languages. With the latter the Amharic has much mutual interchange ; as the Author has had opportunities to observe, in respect to the languages of the Danakil*, the Somal, the Gallas†, the Argobbans, the natives of Harrar (or Arargê), and those of Garaguê. But the advantages to be derived from the study of this language, which should be accompanied by that of its parent language, the Ethiopic, are not merely of a scientific

* See Dankali Vocabulary.

† See the Rev. J. L. Krapf's Galla Grammar, his Translation of St. Matthew's Gospel, and his Galla Vocabulary.

nature. When the covetous Abyssinian offers his hidden treasures to the speculating European—when he opens his barriers to the travelling naturalist, to explore his Ambas and his K'wallas—when that country, which stands single in the whole history of Eastern Nations, as a Christian State that was not overwhelmed by the sweeping floods of Islamism, attracts different and, in some measure, conflicting interests of religion, philanthropy and politics—the study of the living Abyssinian Languages, among which the Amharic stands foremost, will become indispensable ; as is already experienced by those whom various motives induce to travel in Abyssinia.

With regard to the Church Missionary Society, the Author begs to repeat the same expressions of sincere gratitude, respect and solicitude, which he has uttered in the Preface to his Dictionary. Whatever the result of the present movements concerning Abyssinia and its future destinies may be ; whether that nation is still to remain in its present uncivilized condition ; whether it be doomed to fall a prey to that Spiritual Power which is assiduously endeavouring to regain the influence which it formerly possessed for a time, or whether it will open itself to the sound of the Gospel and its accompanying temporal and eternal blessings, and emerge into the light of truth and civilization ; this Society has been the first instrument, in the hand of God, to offer the hand of Christian assistance and fellowship to them. If it pleases God to prosper their labours of love, they will be amply rewarded for all the difficulties and disappointments they have been subjected to, or which may be still awaiting them. May His blessing be upon them !

C. W. ISENBERG.

LONDON, Jan 4, 1842.

ERRATA.

<i>Page</i>	<i>Line</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>Read</i>	<i>for</i>
18	12	top,	First	Second.
28	11	...	ልቅብ፡	ልቅብ፡
31	12	...	ΦርΦር፡	ΦርΦር፡
38	4	bottom,	ለደህ-ድ፡	ለደህ-ድ፡
39	11	...	Form	From.
42	11	...	Twelfth	Eleventh.
48	17	top,	Suffixes	all Suffixes.
53	14	...	ሙን-ተ፡	ሙን-ተ፡
58	13	...	ተናጠ፡	ተናጠ፡
63	8	...	III.	3.
..	9	...	IV.	4.
64	14	...	ሳስ፡	ሳስ፡
65	23	...	Regular Trilateral	Trilateral.
81	4	...	conjugation	verb.
83	5	bottom,	ሙፍገር፡	ሙፍገር፡
88	8	...	ደሰባ-በረሰ፡	ደሰባ-በረሰ፡
..	2	...	ደሰባ-በሩ፡	ደሰባ-በሩ፡
90	7	top,	ያደረ-ሚ፡	ያደረ-ሚ፡
93	17	...	the peculiarities	and the peculiarities.
..	20	...	Radical	Conjugation.
119	10	...	ነጋዢ-ሁ፡	ነጋዢ-ሁ፡
129	4	...	አለመለሙ፡	አለመለሙ፡
133	6	...	ደነ-በለል፡	ደነ-በለል፡
139	10	...	የመ-የህል፡	የመ-የህል፡
145	5	bottom,	ይመግ-በዋጥ፡	ይመግ-በዋጥ፡
146	11	...	thee	them.
147	10	...	ሙን-በዋጥኝል፡	ሙን-በዋጥኝል፡
...	1	...	chapters	chapter.
149	16	top,	ዘም፡	ዘም፡
...	26	...	ፈ.ቁ.ቁ፡	ፈ.ቁ.ቁ፡
150	9	...	“without”	“within.”
152	6	...	ለምንድር፡	ለምንድር፡
158	20	...	ነ—፡	ነ—፡
168	16	...	ስያድ፡	ስያድ፡
174	15	...	show	to show.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION	PAGE 1.
--------------	---------

PART I. PHONOLOGY.

ON THE SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF THE AMHARIC ALPHABET.

CHAP. I. On the Amharic Alphabet	3
CHAP. II. Numerical Order and Names of the Letters	4
CHAP. III. Virtue, Organical Classification, and Pronunciation of the Letters,	6
CHAP. IV. Seven Vocal Orders of the Abyssinian Letters	8
CHAP. V. On Syllabification	11
CHAP. VI. On Accentuation, and Interpunctuation	13
CHAP. VII. Various Changes of Letters:	
1. Addition	16
2. Contraction	16
3. Elision	18
4. Changes produced and undergone by the letter ¶ : and its corresponding Vowels, I and È	19
5. Changes produced and undergone by the letter ¶ : and its corresponding Vowels, U and O	20
6. Changes occurring with the Diphthongs	21
7. Reduplication of Letters	21
8. Exchange of Letters	21
9. Changes occurring with the Liquid Letters	22
10. Transposition, and further Contraction of Letters	22

PART II. ETYMOLOGY.

ON THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

Preliminary Remarks	23
CHAP. I. On the Nouns:	
SECT. I. Formation	24
SECT. II. Species	35
SECT. III. Gender	36
SECT. IV. Number	38
SECT. V. Declension	40
CHAP. II. On the Numerals	41

CONTENTS.

CHAP. III. On the Pronouns :

SECT. I.	Separable Personal Pronouns	43
SECT. II.	Séparable Possessive Pronouns	45
SECT. III.	Demonstrative Pronouns	45
SECT. IV.	Interrogative Pronouns	46
SECT. V.	Reflective Pronouns	47
SECT. VI.	Separable Distributive Pronoun	47
SECT. VII.	Indefinite Pronouns	48
SECT. VIII. Inseparable Pronouns :		
1.	Personal Suffixes to Verbs	48
2.	Possessive Suffixes to Nouns	49
3.	Prefixed Relative Pronouns	50
4.	Prefixed Distributive Pronoun	50

CHAP. IV. On the Verbs :

SECT. I.	Formation and Quality	50
SECT. II.	Various Derivations (Forms or Voices)	52
List of Conjugations (Derivations, Voices) of the Regular and Perfect Trilateral Verb		53
Other Classes :		
i.	Trilaterals whose first Radical is a Guttural	55
ii.	Geminant Trilaterals	56
iii.	Geminants whose first Radical is a Guttural	56
iv.	Perfect Biliterals	56
v.	Imperfect Biliterals of Prima ئ	57
vi.	Defective Verbs :	
1.	Verbs with an Absorbed Guttural at the End	57
2.	Verbs with an Absorbed Guttural in the Middle	58
3.	Verbs with an Absorbed پ : in the Middle	58
4.	Verbs with an Absorbed و : in the Middle	58
5.	Verbs with two Absorbed Gutturals, derived from Quadrilaterals	58
6.	Verbs doubly Imperfect	59
vii. Quadrilateral and Pluriliteral Verbs :		
1.	Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals	59
2.	Derivatives from Trilaterals, having one Radical dou- bled and transposed	60
3.	Geminants	60
4.	Quadrilaterals and Pluriliterals of different Radicals	61

CONTENTS.

SECT. III. Flexion :

I.	Moods	61
II.	Tenses	62
III.	Number	63
IV.	Persons	63

SECT. IV. Conjugation :

Auxiliaries **חָנָא**: **יְהִזְקָעֵל**: and **יְהִי**:

1.	Conjugation of the Perfect and Regular Triliteral Verbs	65
----	---	----

2. Conjugation of various Imperfect Forms of Triliteral Verbs:

I.	Triliteral Verbs whose first Radical is ח (or ו):	93
II.	Triliteral Geminants	96
III.	Geminants whose first Radical is ח :	102

3. Conjugation of Biliteral Verbs:

I.	Perfect Biliterals	104
II.	Imperfect Biliterals <i>primæ radicalis</i> ח :	108
III.	Contracted Biliterals:	
(aa)	With Absorbed Guttural at the End	113
(bb)	With Absorbed Guttural in the Middle	116
(cc)	With Absorbed פ : in the Middle	118
(dd)	With Absorbed ו : in the middle	120
IV.	Doubly Imperfect Biliterals;	
(aa)	Doubly Contracted	123
(bb)	Beginning with ח : and terminating with an Absorbed Guttural	124
(cc)	Beginning with פ :, which absorbs a Guttural,	126

4. Conjugations of Quadrilateral and Plurilateral Verbs:

I.	Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals	128
II.	Derivates from Triliterals, having one Radical doubled and transposed	131
III.	Geminants	132
IV.	Quadrilaterals and Plurilaterals of different Radicals,	134

5. Defective and Anomalous Verbs

SECT. V. Connection of Pronouns with Verbs	142
--	-----

CHAP. V. On the Adverbs	148
-------------------------	-----

CHAP. VI. On the Prepositions	153
-------------------------------	-----

CHAP. VII. On the Conjunctions	158
--------------------------------	-----

CHAP. VIII. On the Interjections	159
----------------------------------	-----

CONTENTS.

PART III. SYNTAX.

CHAP. I. Nature of Sentences - - - - -	161
CHAP. II. Subject and Attribute - - - - -	162
CHAP. III. Uses and Construction of the Noun :	
A. Construction of Substantives with Substantives - - - - -	164
B. Construction of Adjectives with Substantives - - - - -	165
C. Number of Nouns - - - - -	165
D. Cases of Declension - - - - -	166
CHAP. IV. Degrees of Comparison - - - - -	170
CHAP. V. On the Numerals - - - - -	171
CHAP. VI. Syntax of the Separable Pronouns - - - - -	172
CHAP. VII. On the Affixed Pronouns - - - - -	173
CHAP. VIII. Construction of the Verb :	
SECT. I. On the Tenses - - - - -	174
SECT. II. On the Moods - - - - -	176
SECT. III. Construction of the Verb with the other parts of the Sentence - - - - -	177
CHAP. IX. Construction of the remaining Parts of Speech - - - - -	178

PART IV.

1. Conversational Modes of Salutation - - - - -	179
2. Exercises - - - - -	183

AMHARIC GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION.

ON THE AMHARIC LANGUAGE IN GENERAL.

I. *The Amharic Language* (አማርኛ : ብንቃ::), a grammatical delineation of which the following pages propose to give, is that Abyssinian Dialect, which is spoken by the greater part of the population of Abyssinia: it prevails in all the provinces of Abyssinia lying between the Taccazé and the Abay or Abyssinian Nile, and in the kingdom of Shoa; and enters besides, extensively, into the languages of Argobba and Harrar. Its next cognate dialect is the *Tigrē Language* (ትግራኛ : ብንቃ::); which is spoken by the inhabitants of Tigrē or the N.E. part of Abyssinia, and has its modifications in the Dumhoeto Dialect at Massowa, and the coast N. of that island, and in the language of Gurāguē. Both the Amharic and the Tigrē Languages are modifications of the Ancient *Ethiopic* or *Gēēz* (ጊዜ : ግዢ::), to which they bear nearly the same relation as some of our Modern European Languages to the Latin; *viz.* that of origin and derivation. However, the present language of Tigrē has preserved a greater similarity to the Ethiopic, and received much less mixture from other languages than the Amharic; the Amhāra people being of a more changeable character, and having had intercourse with a greater variety of foreign nations than their Tigrē brethren.

II. The denomination “Amharic,” which this language has received, is obviously attributable to the province called *Amhāra*, situate between Shoa, Godjam, Bagammeder, Lasta, and Angot. That province, which is now the seat of the Yedjows, Argobbans, and other Galla tribes—who partly speak the Argobba dialect, partly the Galla language—must have been considered the chief province of Abyssinia at the time the language obtained that name: for not only have all the countries in which the same language is spoken—excepting Shoa and Efat, *i.e.* all the N.W.

countries of Abyssinia to the W. of the Taccazé—been called Amhāra, but the natives also frequently apply it to their religion; so that the appellation *Amharic* is used synonymously with *Christian*, although at present the greater part of the population of that province are Mohammedans. But in what the superiority of that province consisted, and the time when it was so pre-eminent, remains still a matter of inquiry: for the reasons which Ludolf assigns, that Amhāra was in the neighbourhood of Shoa, from which the Royal Family of Solomon, which spoke this language, was restored, after the downfal of the Zagæan line; and that Amba Geshen (better *Gēshē*), where subsequently the Princes of that family were confined, was situate in Amhāra—seem rather unsatisfactory; nor have we at present to offer any thing better in lieu of them.

III. From the fact of the Amharic Language being a descendant of the Ethiopic—which will be evident, from a superficial knowledge of both—it claims the same *affinity to the Semitic family* as its parent; although it has adopted other forms and words from surrounding nations, which bear no relation to that family. A knowledge, therefore, of any of the Semitic Dialects, such as the Hebrew and the Arabic, facilitates, to a great extent, the study of the Amharic. We shall, in the course of this work, have frequent occasions to refer to the Arabic and the Hebrew; although it will be our endeavour also to suit the capacity of those who may have had no opportunity of learning any but European languages.

IV. According to the nature of a Grammar, this work will be arranged under the following heads: 1. *Phonology*; 2. *Etyymology*; 3. *Syntax*:—treating, in the First Part, on the Sounds and Letters; in the Second, on the different Parts of Speech; and in the Third, on the Grammatical Construction of Words into Sentences. There is, as yet, no occasion to speak on Amharic Prosody; but instead of this, we shall annex a variety of Amharic expressions, and a few Exercises.

V. 𠁥	VI. 𠁦	VII. 𠁧
Bohemian ě, or iě, as German jeder	Vowelless or short ě, as in since, summer	o usually sharp, as in so, or like wo
𠁢𠁣𠁮: hǎmis (fifth)	𠁢𠁤𠁮: sǎdis (sixth)	𠁨𠁩𠁮: sābě' (seventh)
𠁣: hě (Boh.)	𠁣: hě, or h	𠁣: ho or hwo
𠁤: lě ..	𠁤: lě .. l	𠁤: lo .. lǔo
𠁥: hě ..	𠁥: hě .. h	𠁥: ho .. hwo
𠁦: mä ..	𠁦: mě .. m	𠁦: mo .. mǔo
𠁧: sě ..	𠁧: sě .. s	𠁧: so .. sǔo
𠁨: rě ..	𠁨: rě .. r	𠁨: ro .. rǔo
𠁩: sě ..	𠁩: sě .. s	𠁩: so .. sǔo
𠁪: shě ..	𠁪: shě .. sh	𠁪: sho .. shǔo
𠁫: kě ..	𠁫: kě .. k'	𠁫: k'o .. k'ǔo
𠁬: bě ..	𠁬: bě .. b	𠁬: bo .. bǔo
𠁭: tě ..	𠁭: tě .. t	𠁭: toe .. tǔo
𠁮: tshě ..	𠁮: tsh.. tsh	𠁮: tsho .. tshǔo
𠁯: hě ..	𠁯: hě .. h	𠁯: ho .. hǔo
𠁰: ně ..	𠁰: ně .. n	𠁰: no .. nǔo
𠁱: gně ..	𠁱: gně .. gn	𠁱: gno .. gnǔo
𠁲: ä ..	𠁲: ä .. x	𠁲: x

PART I.—PHONOLOGY.

ON THE
SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF THE AMHARIC LANGUAGE.~~~~~
CHAP. I.

ON THE AMHARIC ALPHABET.

THE Amharic Language is written with the same letters as the Ethiopic; each letter varying in seven different forms, in order to express different sounds; Vowels and Consonants not being separated. But besides the Twenty-six Ethiopic, the Amharic Language has seven peculiar Orders of Letters, which serve to express sounds not existing in the former: they are the following :

በ:	በ፡፡						
ቻ፡፡							
ቻ፡፡							
ቻ፡፡							
ቻ፡፡							
ቻ፡፡							
ቻ፡፡							

These, added to the 26 Ethiopic orders, give to the Amharic Alphabet the number of 33 orders of letters; that is, each order consisting of 7 forms or characters, 231 different characters. Add to these the 4 times 5, i.e. 20 Diphthongs, you have 251; which, to commit to memory, call for the close application of the student. The Alphabetical Table opposite embodies them all; giving a correct exhibition of the numerical arrangement of the letters, with their names and value; and the phonical order, power, and Ethiopical designation of the seven different orders, with the pronunciation affixed in English to each character.

The Abyssinian Ciphers are as follow:

፩: 1. ይ: 2. እ፡ 3. ባ፡ 4. ዕ፡ 5. ደ፡ 6. ዓ፡ 7. የ፡ 8. ባ፡ 9. ገ፡ 10.
 ገ፡ 11. ዘ፡ 12. ዕ፡ 13. ው፡ 14. ዕ፡ 15. ዓ፡ 16. ዕ፡ 17. ዘ፡ 18. ዘ፡ 19. የ፡ 20.
 ዘ፡ 30. ው፡ 40. የ፡ 50. ደ፡ 60. ይ፡ 70. ዘ፡ 80. የ፡ 90. ይ፡ 100.
 ይ፡ 200. ዘ፡ 1000. ዕ፡ 2000. ዘ፡ or ዘ፡ 10000. ዘ፡ 100000.

NOTE.—A greater number of Diphthongs might have been added; as the Abyssinians, not being accustomed to write the language they speak, like to contract several sounds together, and to express them by single characters. Ludolf has given, in his Amharic Grammar, several specimens, showing how they apply this to foreign languages. We observe, here, that we have seen several instances of the same mode of proceeding in their own language: especially do they like to combine the fourth with the sixth form; e.g. ተ፡ twā, for ተወ፡፡ ፊ፡ fwā, for ፊወ፡፡ ጥ፡ mwā, for ጥወ፡ &c. But as those figures have not been generally adopted, and the number of characters is already large enough, and suited to express almost any sound, we have abstained from mentioning them in the Alphabet; noticing them here only, in order to put those on their guard who may happen, in their intercourse with Abyssinians, to meet such uncouth figures, that they may not be frightened.

~~~~~

## CHAP. II.

### NUMERICAL ORDER, AND NAMES OF THE LETTERS.

1. For the general Order, in which these letters follow each other, no reason can be assigned; as it has no analogy in other languages, nor any foundation in the natural developement of sound from the organs of speech, but seems to have been arbitrarily put together. Exceptions are, the succession of ዘ፡ and ዘ፡፡ ተ፡ and ተ፡፡ ን፡ and ን፡፡ ከ፡ and ከ፡፡ ድ፡ and ድ፡፡ ዓ፡ and ዓ፡፡ and ዕ፡ (for the resemblance of figure) ዕ፡ and ዕ፡፡

2. The Names of the letters have been delivered to us from remote antiquity; and as most of them, if not all, are significant, we think it but proper to preserve them. They must have been formerly in general use among the Abyssinians, else it is not conceivable how they should have been transmitted to Europeans: but the natives of the present day know nothing about them, except from the schools of the Missionaries.\*

3. The signification of most of the names of the letters is clear: they refer to the sound they express, adding the adjective termination *āwi*, contracted into *āi*, or mis-spelled *oi*, for the masculine, and *āwit*, *āit*, *āit*, or *āt*, for the

\* This, however, is no reason to omit them; because the Abyssinians do not at all dislike to have names put to their hitherto unnamed letters; many of which are the same as those which they know, from the Psalms, to belong to the sacred language of the Old Testament. Many of the most learned Abyssinians have applied to the Missionaries for the express purpose of learning the names of their own letters; and thought to have gained an invaluable treasure, when they had learned them.

feminine gender. A short analysis of these names, as far as it can be given, will establish this statement.

1. **ሀ**: Hoï, **ሁ**: for **ሁ**: or **ሁ**: the *h* letter.
2. **ለ**: Läwï, **ለ**: the *l* letter.
3. **ሐ**: Hääüt, **ሐ**: (f.) for **ሐ**: the *h* letter.
4. **መ**: Mai, **መ**: for **መ**: the *m* letter.
5. **ወ**: Säüt, **ወ**: for **ወ**: (fem.) the *s* letter.
7. **ሰ**: Sät, **ሰ**: for **ሰ**: the *s* letter.
8. **ሸ**: Shät, **ሸ**: for **ሸ**::
11. **ተ**: Täwi, **ተ**::
12. **ቻ**: Tshäwi, **ቻ**::
19. **ወ**: Wäwi, **ወ**::
21. **ዘ**: Zäi, **ዘ**: for **ዘ**::
22. **ዘ**: Zäi (French *j*), **ዘ**: for **ዘ**::;
27. **ተ**: Taït, **ተ**: for **ተ**::
28. **ት**: Tsh'äit, **ት**: for **ት**::
29. **ፋ**: Päit, **ፋ**: for **ፋ**::

The following names are derived from the cognate Semitic Dialects, probably from the Hebrew, since they have the names of the Hebrew letters in the Psalms:

|     |            |        |            |      |          |        |
|-----|------------|--------|------------|------|----------|--------|
| 6.  | <b>ሩ</b> : | Rë-ës, | <b>ሩ</b> : | Heb. | <b>ሩ</b> | Rësh.  |
| 9.  | <b>ቀ</b> : | Käf,   | <b>ቀ</b> : | ..   | <b>ቀ</b> | Kof.   |
| 10. | <b>በ</b> : | Bêt,   | <b>በ</b> : | ..   | <b>በ</b> | Bêt.   |
| 16. | <b>አ</b> : | Alf,   | <b>አ</b> : | ..   | <b>አ</b> | Alef.  |
| 17. | <b>ካ</b> : | Käf,   | <b>ካ</b> : | ..   | <b>ካ</b> | Käf.   |
| 20. | <b>አ</b> : | Äin,   | <b>አ</b> : | ..   | <b>አ</b> | Äin,   |
| 26. | <b>ገ</b> : | Geml,  | <b>ገ</b> : | ..   | <b>ገ</b> | Gimel. |

With regard to their significations, the student is referred to the Hebrew Lexicon.

Concerning the rest, the signification of which is not so clear, we leave them for the amusement of such as will take the trouble of searching in the Ethiopic and the cognate dialects.



## CHAP. III.

ON THE VIRTUE, ORGANICAL CLASSIFICATION, AND PRONUNCIATION  
OF THE LETTERS, CONSIDERING THEM AS SIMPLE CONSONANTS.

1. As to the *VIRTUE* of the letters, we must state, first of all, that Consonants and Vowels are combined in the same characters; and on this account, each letter is able to present a syllable by itself. But laying aside, for the present, the Vowel question, we proceed at once to *CLASSIFY* the letters according to the organs chiefly concerned in their pronunciation.

2. According to the *organs*, the letters are divided—

- A. In *Gutturals*: **U**: **ঠ**: **ষ**: **া**: **ঁ**:
- B. In *Palatals*: **ঁ**: **ষ**: **ঢ**: **ষ**:
- C. In *Linguals* and *Dentals*: **ঁ**: **ষ**: **ঢ**: **ণ**: **ত**: **ঢ**: **ি**: **়**:  
**঱**: **ল**: **ঢ**: **ণ**: **ষ**: **ঁ**:
- D. In *Labials*: **া**: **ি**: **ঁ**: **ষ**: **ঢ**: **ণ**:
- E. *Nasal*: **ঁ**:

3. In speaking on the *PRONUNCIATION* of these letters, we must refer to the Ancient Ethiopic, the various dialects of Abyssinia, especially the Tigrê, and the cognate Semitic Languages.

A. The *Gutturals*.—In the present Amharic, **U**: **ঠ**: and **ষ**: are pronounced alike, like *h* in *horse*, and are often exchanged for **া**:, thus entirely dropping the aspiration. The Tigrê language shows us, however, that each of these letters must have formerly expressed a distinct and different sound; for in it, **U**: sounds like our *h* in *horse*, and answers the Arabic *س*, and the Hebrew *ׁנ*. **ঠ**: is pronounced with a pressure in the lower part of the throat, like the Arabic *ث*; **ষ**: like the Swiss *ch*, the Arabic *ڙ*, and the Hebrew *ׁת*; and **া**!: like the Scotch and German *ch*, in *loch*, *nicht*, and answering the Hebrew *ׁכ* without the Dagesh. This pronunciation of the **া**! is equally in use in the Amharic language.

**া**! and **ঁ**! are both pronounced alike, as the Greek *Spiritus lenis* ('); but in the Tigrê they are different among each other, **া**! being like *Spiritus lenis*, *l*, or *N*, and **ঁ**! like the Arabic *س* and Hebrew *ׁי*, with the same pressure in the throat as the *ڙ*, but without the aspiration.

B. The *Palatals*:

**ঁ**: corresponds with *ঁ* in the Hebrew, and with *ڙ* in the Arabic Language. On account of its peculiar pronunciation, we may call it an *explosive* letter, such as **ঁ**: **ণ**: and **ষ**: in the third, and **ষ**: in the

fourth class: it is a sudden explosion of breath from the palate, after the latter has been spasmodically contracted. We have endeavoured to represent this pronunciation, after the example of Ludolf, by writing K', but it must be heard before it can be conceived. This pronunciation, however, is not uniform, although general. In Tigrē, it is besides often pronounced like the Arabic ڙ, often like ڧ; in Shoa generally, like a mere Spiritus lenis ('), similar to the ڦ as pronounced by common people in Egypt. Thus the word ՚ΦΠΛ: is pronounced in three or four different ways: in good language, Tāk'ab'bālā; in Tigrē, Tāghāb'bālā (تَغْبَلْ) and Tākab'bālā (تَكْبَلْ); and in Shoa, Tā-ăb'bālā.

՚: sounds like our *k*, or *c* before consonants.

՚: is pronounced like *y* as consonant, or like the German *j* &c.

՚: is pronounced like our *g* before *a*, *o*, *u*, and before consonants.

#### C. The *Linguals* and *Dentals*:

՚: like our *l*.

՚: and ՚: may originally (perhaps answering ڦ and ڻ, ڻ and ՚) have sounded differently from each other: at present, they are pronounced alike, sounding like our *s*.

՚: sounds like our *r*.

՚: formed in the Amharic by the accession of the ՚ sound to the ՚: and ՚:, is the same as ڦ, ՚, and *sh*.

՚: is pronounced like ՚, ՚, and *t*.

՚: formed by combining a soft sibilation with ՚, sounds like *tsh*, or rather like *t* with a German *j*.

՚: is the same as our *n*.

՚: is like *z*.

՚: like the French *j*.

՚: is the same with our *d*.

՚: sounds like the English *j*, or rather like the German *dj*: it is often used to express the Arabic ڙ.

՚: ՚: and ՚: are the same sort of letters in this class as the ՚: in the Second, which we call Explosive; because they, as it were, explode from between the fore-part of the tongue and the roof of the mouth or the root of the teeth. We have in the Alphabet represented them by writing ՚, ՚, and ՚. But as some more or less hissing seems to accompany this explosion, ՚: and ՚: frequently interchange.

՚: is pronounced like *ts*, or the German *z*.

**D. The Labials:**

**ሀ**: is the same as our *m*.

**በ**: the same as our *b*. In Tigrē, it generally sounds like *v*, **ለ**, or the Modern Greek *β*: and this pronunciation must have been formerly more general; for otherwise it seems unaccountable, how it could have been turned into a mere vowel *o*, as in **ሙጥር**; whereas the soft *b*, our *v*, being a mere condensation of that Vowel, was more liable to that change.

**ወ**: is the same as *w*.

**ኝ**: the explosive letter of this class: the breath puffs off from between the lips, before the vowel is heard.

**ኅ**: is the same as **ሁ**, **ቁ**, and *f*.

**ጥ**: our *p*, merely used for foreign words.

**E. The Nasal ተ**: is pronounced similar to the French and Italian *gn*, or rather like the Spanish *ñ*.

4. The letters are to be further divided, as in other Semitic Dialects, into *Radicals* and *Serviles*. Servile letters are those which are employed in the process of grammatical formation, derivation, and flexion: the radicals are never so employed. The serviles are often radical, though Radicals are never servile. The Servile Letters are,

**አ፡ሙ፡ስ፡በ፡ተ፡ኋ፡ኅ፡ወ፡ኩ፡ሮ፡**



## CHAP. IV.

## ON THE SEVEN VOCAL ORDERS OF THE ABYSSINIAN LETTERS.

1. As the Abyssinian Languages differ from the other Semitic Dialects (except the Coptic), in being written from the left to the right; so they are likewise different from them, as well as from most other languages, in the manner in which the Voices or Vowels are expressed.

2. This is done in the Abyssinian Languages, not, as in the other Semitic Dialects, by any smaller points or figures written above or below the line; nor, as in other languages, by a distinct sort of characters of equal value with the Vowelless Consonants; but by a system of changes which the original letter itself undergoes; each letter expressing *Consonant and Vowel in the same figure*, and *assuming seven different forms*, according to the Vowels which are attached to it; which forms (after Ludolf) we call *Orders of Letters*.

NOTE.—The terms “Consonant” and “Vowel” are not quite suitable to the Abyssinian Alphabet; as the Vowels themselves are but con-sonant, being inexpressible by themselves; and the Consonants being, as appears from the Sixth Order, in form more independent than the Vowels: but to be understood, we must use the expression.

3. The Seven different *Voices* or *Vowels* expressed by these Seven Orders are these:

A. Short ā, as in *fat, lad, &c.*; answering the Fat-ha (‿) in the Arabic, and the Patach (‿) in the Hebrew. Like the former, it is modifiable, approaching the ē sound, or the short Hebrew Segol (ׁ).

B. ū, as in *full, put, lucid*; or ö, as in *move*; or oo, as in *fool, &c.*

C. ī, as in *pin, finger, hinder*; or ee, as in *bee, see*; or ea, as in *read, sea*; or e, as in *scene*.

D. ī, as in *far, father, rather*.

E. ē or ê; a sharp ê, with a slight ī sound before it, as in the Slavonian Dialects; as the German *je*, “ever,” or the English *yea*.

F. ē or ý, as in *liv-er, ber-ry*. This order also is often mute or vowel-less, as in the English and French Languages the mute ē. In fact, it completely resembles the Shwa simplex (ׁ) of the Hebrew Language.

G. ö, generally sharp, as in *so*; or with w before it, as in *woe, wonder*.

4. In order to express these seven sounds by each letter, the Abyssinians have adopted the following plan:

A. The *Original Form* is used for the expression of the *First Vowel* (ā). It therefore is called, with its Ethiopic name, ብዕዘ፡ Gē-ēz, which signifies “original”; and is therefore applied to the Ethiopic Language in general (አማርኛ፡ ብዕዘ፡), in order to distinguish it from any translation. In reference to the letter forms, it means the original, simple, unaltered form, U፡ A፡ ኃ፡ &c.

B. The *Second Vowel* (ū), which is called ቅአብ፡ Kā-ēb, i.e. “altered,” “second,” is expressed by the affixion of a point (•) to the right-hand side of the letter, generally in the middle (U፡ Φ፡ መ፡ ኃ፡); in four instances at the bottom (ጋ፡ ግ፡ ድ፡ ግ፡); and in one instance, under the letter (ጋ፡).

C. The *Third Vowel* (ī), which is called ሚአብ፡ Sālēs, i.e. “third,” is generally represented by a similar point annexed to the foot of the letter on the right side, and below the line, (አ፡ አ፡ ኃ፡ ክ፡ ድ፡). Where the original has no foot (i.e. line going downwards), a foot is formed; and in

order thereby not to enlarge the general size of the letter, the rest is diminished where it has been thought necessary (**Ψ**: **ω**: **ψ**: **Φ**: **φ**:). Where the original has a point below, that is turned upwards (**Σ**: **Δ**:). An exception is, **Π**::

D. The *Fourth Vowel* (ä), called **ZR-NO:** Rabé' "the fourth," effects seven different changes:

- (a) A foot line is made as in the preceding order, but without point:  
**ψ: ιψ: ψι: Φ: ηι: Θ: δι::**

(b) Foot lines on the right side are shortened: **Λ: κι: θι: ηι: η: ξι:**  
**ηι: θηι: Η: ηι: θηι: Θι: δηι: ξηι: ξηι::**

(c) A short horizontal line with point, is added, to the left at the bottom:  
**Φ: Τ: Τι: Ζ: Ρ: Ι: Τ::**

(d) The same added to the right at the head: **Τ: doubled Τ::**

(e) Foot line broken: **Ζ::**

(f) Foot point to the left shortened: **Ρ: Ρ::**

E. The change effected by the *Fifth Vowel* (ê), called Համէ: Hāmës “fifth,” is simple: it consists in adding a small circular line or eye to the right side at the bottom, or in the middle: in instances where the letter has received a foot line in the two preceding forms, at the bottom of that line; e.g. Կ: Ա: Ծ: Բ: Ը: &c.

F. The greatest diversity is presented by the *Sixth Order* (ë or ÿ) **ଅଷ୍ଟାଂଶ**: i.e. "sixth." Instead of analyzing it, we recommend the scholar to examine that column himself in the Alphabet.

G. The *Seventh Vowel* (o) סָבֵּה: Sâbê, i.e. "seventh," effects the following changes:

- (a) A small circular line is formed at the top: **U:** **ʌ:** **ɔ:** **ə:**  
**ɪ:** **ʊ:** **ɜ:** **ʌ:** **ɒ:** **ɔ:**

(b) Foot lines on the right side are shortened: **ʌ:** **ɒ:** **ɪ:** **ʊ:** **ə:**  
**ɪ:** **ʊ:** **ʌ:** **ɒ:** **ɜ:** **ə:** **ɔ:** **ɒ:**

(c) Foot lines on the left side or in the middle are formed: **ə:**  
**ʊ:** **ə:** **ɒ:** **ə:** **ə:**

(d) Other forms are, **P:** **ʃ:** **T:** **ʒ:**

5. As for the *quantity* of the vowels, it must be said, that those of the First and Sixth Order are constantly *short*; those of the Fourth and Fifth constantly *long*; and the rest are sometimes long, sometimes short.

**NOTE.** — Concerning the Diphthongs, as their pronunciation presents no difficulty, nothing remains to be said except what has been mentioned in Chap. I.

## CHAP. V.

## ON SYLLABIFICATION.

1. In the Abyssinian Languages, each letter, being Consonant and Vowel in the same figure, is able to constitute a *Syllable*; e.g. **ና**: nă-gă-ră; **ናፈ**: ně-fa-k'ē. Such syllables, formed by single letters, we may call *simple* or *open syllables*.

2. But although this is the case, they *can* combine two or three letters (not more) together, to form one syllable; which will be called, if consisting of two letters, a *closed*; if of three, a *compound* syllable. Thus, e.g. **ቍል**: k'äl, "word," is closed; **አዝብ**: hězb, "people," is compound.

3. This is performed with the assistance of the Sixth Order; the vowel of which being short, and rather a semi-vowel, or the same thing as the Hebrew Shwā (ሸ), is liable to become *mute*. Whenever this occurs, its letter must be added either to the preceding or to the following letter, in order to be pronouncible; e.g. **ገ**: gă-r, "meek." **በል**: bél-hä-t, "dexterity."

4. The question then is, *When is the letter of the Sixth Order mute or vowelless?* A few general rules, which will answer it, shall be laid down here.

A. Letters of the Sixth Order are *MUTE at the end of words* generally; e.g. **ሀ**: här, "silk"; **ቍል**: k'äl, "word"; **ገ**: năgär, "word," "thing"; **ሰሳ**: tsa-häy, "sun"; **ዓለም**: ä-lam, "world."

**NOTE.**—Seeming deviations, but no real ones, are those Ethiopic words which in the Amharic have been abbreviated: in such instances, the final letter of this form is not vowelless, reminding of the guttural letter, which is no longer written, but still pronounced:

**ሰሙ**: să-mě, "wax." Eth. **ሰሙ**::

**በር**: bě-rě, "pencil." Eth. **በር**::

**ንጂ**: en-djy, "but." Eth. **ንጂ**::

A real exception is this, which occurs in Feminine terminations of Pronouns or Verbs, in the Second Person Singular of the Feminine Gender, which are sometimes written in the third, sometimes in the sixth form, and may be pronounced or not; e.g. **አንተ**: better **አንተ**: an-tshy, "thou (female)!" **ቀሩ**: or **ቀሩ**: k'ä-dj, or k'ä-djy, "draw (thou female)!"

B. The same letters *remain MUTE*, when the words to which they belong, receive such additions at the end, by which their form is not changed: e.g. **ትሬ**: tshär, "kind." **ትሬነት**: tshär-nät, "kindness." **ባል**: bā-l, "husband," "owner." **ባልተት**: bäl-têt, "widow."

**NOTE.**—An exception is **ቍልታ**: k'äl-tshä, "sorcerer," "soothsayer."

C. When two letters of this order meet together at the end of a vowel, both are mute, unless want of organic affinity, or gemination, prevents their being so; but when such a word is augmented at the end, the last letter of this order is sounded:

- |                                               |                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| (a) <b>ՃԸՓ:</b> dă-rk', "dry."                | <b>ԱՊՄՏ:</b> lă-mts', "leprosy."         |
| <b>ՄԱՐՀ:</b> mă-rz, "poison."                 | <b>ՓՆՔ:</b> kănd, "horn."                |
| <b>ԱՅՆ:</b> ā-ÿn, "eye."                      |                                          |
| (b) <b>ՃՊՄԾ:</b> lě-gěm, "superficiality."    | <b>ԳՌԻՒ:</b> gě-běz, "hypocrite."        |
| <b>ՃՔՊՄ:</b> ā-k'ěm, "measure."               | <b>ՃԵՎԸ:</b> ā-tsh'yr, "short."          |
| (c) <b>ՈՎՄԳՎ:</b> sě-měm, "harmony."          | <b>ՃՈՇ:</b> ē-lěl, "huzzah!"             |
| <b>ԽԴՐԻ:</b> kě-tět, "perfection," "fulness." |                                          |
| (d) <b>ՓԸՆՂ:</b> k'ěd-sě-nā, "holiness."      | <b>ԿՊՄԸՐ:</b> zěm-dě-nā, "relationship." |

D. When a letter of the sixth form commences a word, its vowel is generally sounded:

- |                                  |                          |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>ՃԸԴ:</b> lě-dăt, "birth."     | <b>ԽՖ:</b> kě-fū, "bad." |
| <b>ՈՄԴ:</b> sě-t'āng, "give me." | <b>ԿՀԳՄԴ:</b> kě-rämt.   |

E. In triliteral words, where all the three letters are of the sixth order, the first is generally sounded; the two following art not:

- |                                |                                          |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <b>ԽԲՌ:</b> hē-zb, "people."   | <b>ՔԸՓ:</b> ts'ě-dk', "righteousness."   |
| <b>ՃՆՔ:</b> dě-nk', "wonder."  | <b>ՃՀՄՊ:</b> ē-rm, "a thing prohibited." |
| <b>ՀՈՇ:</b> rě-st, "heritage." | <b>ՊՄՌԴ:</b> mě-sh't, "wife."            |

F. In triliteral words, where the two first letters are of the sixth order, the first is sounded; the second is not:

- |                                        |                                       |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>ԳՀՄՎ:</b> gě-r-mā, "majesty."       | <b>ՃՆՋ:</b> ē-n-djā, "I do not know." |
| <b>ԳԴՄՋ:</b> gě-m-dja, "muslin cloth." |                                       |

But in many cases the second letter also is sounded:

- |                                        |                                  |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>ԳՄՎ:</b> gě-sě-lā, "brown leopard." | <b>ՓՄՌ:</b> k'ě-mě-shā, "a bit." |
| <b>ՃՋԴ:</b> ē-djě-gē, "sleeve."        |                                  |

G. In quadrilateral words, beginning with two letters of the sixth order, and terminating in — ՚: feminine, the first letter is sounded; the second is mute:

- |                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>ԳԱԹ՚:</b> fě-l-t'ăt, "megrim." | <b>ԳԸԿՎ՚:</b> fě-r-hăt, "fear." |
| <b>ՆԵՐ՚:</b> ně-f-găt, "avarice." | <b>ԴԱՌ՚:</b> ně-b-rat, "state." |

H. In quadriliteral feminine adjectives, whose letters are all of this order, the first and second letters are sounded, whilst the rest are mute:

**፳፻፻፻**: nē-ts'ē-ht, "pure."    **፳፻፻፻**: k'ē-dē-st, "holy."

**፲፻፻፻**: rē-kē-st, "impure."    **፳፻፻፻**: ts'ē-dē-k't, "righteous."

I. In quadriliteral words, whose three first letters are of the sixth order, the first and second are generally sounded, whilst the third is mute, unless obviated by Lit. C.:

**፳፻፻፻**: ē-lē-l-tā, "the shouting."    **፳፻፻፻**: nē-ts'ē-h-nā, "purity."

J. In pluriliterals, beginning with three letters of this order, these are generally formed into one syllable; either the first and third, or the second and third letters being mute:

**፳፻፻፻፻**: Krē-s-tos, "Christ."    **፳፻፻፻፻**: frē-m-biā, "breast-bone."

NOTE.—These rules will meet most cases: we refrain from adding more at this place, as it would swell this chapter to too large an extent; while in the further course of the Grammar, especially in those parts which treat on the Pronouns and the Verbs, the rest will be easily deduced.

## CHAP. VI.

### ON ACCENTUATION, AND POINTS OF DISTINCTION.

I. The Abyssinians have no marks for their accents. Some general Rules for Accentuation are as follow:—

A. In words consisting of long and short syllables (long and short either by the number of letters or by the quantity of vowels), the long syllable generally has the accent:

**፳፻**: tērē, "raw," "genuine."    **፳፻**: gērā, "left."    **፳፻**: bāgō, "good."  
**፳፻**: nētsū, "pure."    **፳፻**: bādō, "empty."    **፳፻**: zārē, "to-day."

In these two latter instances, the first syllable has the accent, because the long ā of the fourth order is the longest vowel:

|                                            |                                     |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>፳፻፻</b> : gādām, "convent."             | <b>፳፻፻፻</b> : nēfāk'ē, "heresy."    |
| <b>፳፻፻</b> : fāk'ād, "will."               | <b>፳፻፻</b> : k'ēdūs, "holy."        |
| <b>፳፻፻፻</b> : māndōr, "the dwelling."      | <b>፳፻፻፻</b> : hodām, "voracious."   |
| <b>፳፻፻፻</b> : mālkām, "good," "beautiful." | <b>፳፻፻፻</b> : zēm'dēnā, "affinity." |

B. In Verbs, the radix without afformatives, as well as with light afformatives (*afformativa levia*), has the accent on the antepenultima (on the third syllable from the end):

**የበደ:** năbärä, "he was."

**ተቀመጥ:** tăk'ă-măt'a, "he sat down."

**ገለጻ፡፡** gă'lats'hū, "I have revealed."

See, however, more under the Verbs.

C. Feminine Adjectives and Substantives of the form **ንግማት፡፡** have the accent on the last syllable; e.g. **ርግምት፡፡** rëgëm't, "cursed."

D. Other Dissyllabic words with short vowels require the accent on penultima:

**ልደት፡፡** lĕdăt, "birth."

**ወምበር፡፡** wă'mbär, "a seat," "chair."

**ገንዘብ፡፡** gă'nzăb, "property."

**ድንግል፡፡** dëngĕl, "virgin."

E. The heavier Suffixes (*suffixa gravia*) and Afformatives require the accent directly to precede them:

**ቆምበር፡፡** "the yoke."

**ቆምበር/ኩና፡፡** k'ambärätshēn, "our yoke."

**መለከት፡፡** "he brought back."

**መለከት/ኩና፡፡** măläsätshēhū, "you brought

back."

2. The *Interpunctuation* of the Abyssinians is very simple. A simple colon (:) serves to divide words from words; and a double colon (::) to separate sentences from sentences.

Note (a)—The colon, which is to prevent words running together, and thereby creating confusion, was formerly a perpendicular line (|), as is evident from inscriptions found at Axum; but that line has been divided into two points, as it was otherwise liable to have been mistaken for the numeral I (10).

(b) The double colon (::) is, in Abyssinian manuscripts, generally reserved for the end of paragraphs; when five red points are inserted into it in the form of a cross, in this manner, ◊◊◊◊◊

#### EXERCISE FOR READING.

(From "the Church History," p. 223.)

Bähawär' yāt      ză/män      băbëtă Crës tĭ yān      ĕn dêhh yäläts'h  
**በአዋጅያት፡፡** **ሁመን፡፡** **በበት፡፡ ከርስቲያን፡፡** **እንዲሁ፡፡ የለች፡፡**  
 In the Apostles' time      in the Church      such  
 a'n dë nät      nă/bärätshëbät, hülätshăū      a'ndé      sëgä      ań' dit  
**እንዲነት፡፡** **እበቅኑ ባች፡፡** **ሁለተው፡፡** **እንደ፡፡** **ሁን፡፡** **እንደት፡፡**  
 a union      was in her,      all of them      one      body      one  
 năfsem      es ki ho'nū      dë räs.      Crës tiyā nătem hü'lü ba Cres tös  
**ነጂሳም** **እስተካሁን፡፡** **ይረዳ፡፡ ከርስቲያኖም፡፡** **ሁለ፡፡** **በኢየሱች፡፡**  
 soul and      that they were      the Christians and      all      in Christ

kā'to      ältä lā' yūm.      hūlā'tshăū      yă A'däm'      lědjo'tsh      ēndă  
**ὴ τοῦ οὐδετέρου:: Οὐαὶ τῷ Φ�:: Ράχεις:: ἀπότολος:: ἄποικος::**  
 never      were separated.      all of them      of Adam      children      as  
 nă'bärü      bă sēgā,      hūlātsh ā ūm      la rāsā'tshăū  
**ἢ οὖτος:: Πάσιγνωστος:: Οὐαὶ τῷ Φ�:: Απότολος::**  
 they were      after the flesh,      all of them and      (as left) to themselves  
 yälä Crést os      yät'ā/fū hät'e-'än ēn dă      nă'bärü      en dēh ūm  
**Ἐπος:: ἔχει τὸν Χριστὸν:: Ρωμαῖος:: Τυράννος:: ἄποικος::**  
 without Christ      lost      sinners      as they      were,      so also  
 bähä/imānot      hūlā'tshăū      bānde      Crë st'os      dānu.  
**Οψερηστής:: Οὐαὶ τῷ Φ�:: Τύραννος:: ἔχει τὸν Χριστὸν::**  
 by faith      all of them      through one Christ      were they saved.  
 hūlātsh āüm      bān dē      mats' rät      tăts'ā/rū.      bān dē dă' mém  
**Οὐαὶ τῷ Φ�:: Τύραννος:: Συγχέτης:: Τύραννος:: Τύραννος::**  
 they all and      by one      calling      were called.      by one blood and  
 ts'ädäk'ū bān dē      män'fā sēm      năts'ū      tăk'ā/dásüm.      P'êt'ros em  
**Ἄξιος:: Τύραννος:: Συγχέτης:: Ιχνοποιός:: Τύραννος:: Άγιος Πέτρος:**  
 justified, by one Spirit and purified      sanctified and.      Peter also  
 lă mĭ yā mĕn      hū lă      ä lă:      ē lān te      yă mă'n gës tēnă  
**Λαμβάνοντες:: Ήτοντες:: Καὶ οἱ πιστοί:: Εἰ λέγετε:: Ρώμης 10:13:**  
 to believers      all      said:      You      of the kingdom (royalty) and  
 yákéhénat wă/gän      nătshéhū      yătämär'ätshém  
**Ράπτης θεοποιός:: Τύραννος:: Εἰ λέγετε:: Ρήσης ηγετός:**  
 of the priesthood a people,      are,      which is elected and  
 yătak'ā/dásätshem      tē ū' lid,      tē g'ält'ū      zänd  
**Ρήσης ηγετός:: Τύραννος:: Τύραννος:: Εἰ λέγετε:: Ηγετός:**  
 and sanctified      a generation,      you should manifest      that  
 kătsh'ā/lämā      wădă      mi yäs dänék'ăū      wădă      bérhānū  
**Ηγετησης:: Θεοποιός:: Μαρτυρίζοντες:: Εἰ λέγετε:: Ηγετησης:**  
 from darkness      unto      marvellous      unto      his light  
 yăts'ārā/tshéhūn      sérā.  
**Ράπτης θεοποιός:: Πάτερ::**  
 of Him that hath called you      the works.

## IN ENGLISH CONSTRUCTION.

"In the time of the Apostles, there was such an union in the Church, that they (the Christians) were all one body and one soul. Christians were never (in no wise) separated in Christ. As all of them were Adam's children, after the flesh, and as in themselves and without Christ they

were lost sinners, so also (now) by faith they were saved through one Christ. They were all called with one calling; justified by one blood; and purified and sanctified by one Spirit. Peter also said to all believers: Ye are a royal and priestly people, a chosen and a sanctified generation, that ye should shew forth the works of Him that hath called you out of darkness unto His marvellous light."

## ~~~~~

### CHAP. VII.

#### VARIOUS CHANGES OF LETTERS.

In order the better to comprehend the various euphonical changes occurring in the constitution of words in the different parts of speech, it is necessary to point out the rules by which the changes in the letters are regulated.

##### 1. *Addition of Letters.*

Speaking, in the first instance, of the ADDITION of letters to words, we regard them as they are joined either at the beginning, or in the middle, or at the end,—prosthesis, epenthesis, and paragoge.

A. When a word commences with a liquid letter, esp. **፻**: or **፻**:, the **፻**: is often preposed; e.g. **፻፻፻፻**: for **፻፻፻**: Näréa. The pre-formative, also, to the First Person Plural of Verbs, in the Present Tense Indicative and Subjunctive, has **፻፻**—: for the Ethiopic **፻**—:: **፻፻፻፻፻፻፻፻**: “we return”; not **፻፻፻፻፻፻፻**:: **፻፻፻**: for **፻፻**: “head.” **፻፻፻፻**: for **፻፻፻**: “wet.”

B. In the middle and at the end after long vowels, **ሺ**: is inserted or affixed; e.g. **ሺሺ**: for **ሺ**: “time.” **ሺሺ.ሺ**: “and the work”; for **ሺሺ**::

NOTE.—This euphonical **ሺ**: must not be confounded with the suffixed pronoun **ሺ**:; which only by the context can be distinguished from it.

##### 2. *Contraction of Letters.*

CONTRACTION occurs most frequently to the vocal letters **ሺ**: (**ሺ**:) **ሺ**: and **ሺ**:, besides these to the gutturals **ሺ**: **ሺ**: and **ሺ**:: They answer the **ሺ** letters of the Hebrew Language, in their becoming quiescent. This is especially the case—

A. In verbs and words derived from them, which, originating in the Ethiopic, on their transition into the Amharic have dropped the gutturals, as not compatible with the character of the latter language. In compensation

for this loss of the consonant, they have retained the vowel, and joined it to the preceding letter:

| Amharic.     | Ethiopic.     |                              |
|--------------|---------------|------------------------------|
| <b>ማቃ</b> :  | <b>፩ሙኬ</b> :  | "to pity," "have mercy."     |
| <b>ጽል</b> :  | <b>ጽአል</b> :  | "to write."                  |
| <b>ተመረ</b> : | <b>ተመሆረ</b> : | "to learn."                  |
| <b>ሙላ</b> :  | <b>ሙልአ</b> :  | "to be full," "to fill."     |
| <b>ገብ</b> :  | <b>ገብአ</b> :  | "to enter."                  |
| <b>ስራ</b> :  | <b>ስርአ</b> :  | "to work."                   |
| <b>ወረ</b> :  | <b>ወርዎ</b> :  | "to order," "to constitute." |
| <b>እሩረ</b> : | <b>እሩረዋ</b> : | "to bring forth fruit."      |
| <b>ጽፊት</b> : | <b>ጽአዲት</b> : | "writing."                   |

B. When a word beginning with **ኋ**: receives a preformative of the first, fourth, or sixth order, the **ኋ**-: consonant is dropped, and the vowel absorbed by the preceding letter. If **ኋ**-: stands in the first order, it changes the preceding short letter to one of the fourth order; if the fourth order precedes, no contraction takes place; if **ኋ**: is of the sixth order, it sometimes changes the preceding short into a long letter, sometimes it does not at all affect it:

|                |              |                |                   |
|----------------|--------------|----------------|-------------------|
| <b>ኋንጂ</b> :   | "the neck."  | <b>ኋንጂት</b> :  | "on the neck."    |
| <b>ኋርያ</b> :   | "a swine."   | <b>ኋርያ</b> :   | "to a swine."     |
| <b>ኋደረገው</b> : | "he did it." | <b>ኋደረገው</b> : | "he who did it."  |
| <b>ኋገኛ</b> :   | "he found."  | <b>ኋገኛለሁ</b> : | "thou wilt find." |

C. The same change, without loss of consonant, takes place with suffixes commencing with **ā**:

**ስራጥሁ**: "your work," from **ስራ**: and **አጥሁ**:

But when such suffixes are joined to letters ending in *ū* or *o*, these letters are changed into diphthongs:

**ስጠቃቄ**: from **ስጠሁ**: and **ቁቄ**: "I gave her."

When joined to letters of the fifth form, the suffix **ā** assumes the **ዋ**:, as similar to the fifth vowel; and rendering that in the fourth form, deprives the preceding letter of its vowel:

**ምሳልያቍና**: from **ምሳል**: and **አቍና**: "our likeness."

**በርያቍው**: and **በረያቍው**: "their ox."

D. In those verbs which are called *geminant*, the two identical letters,

i.e. second and third radicals, are, in several moods and tenses, contracted into one letter, which letter then is sounded as a double letter:

**ΦΛΛ:** "it was light."    **ΞΦΛΛ:** for **ΞΦΛΛΛ:** "it is light."

**ΠΞΞ:** "he sent."    **ΡΞΞΠΞΞ:** for **ΡΞΞΠΞΞΞ:** "he that sends."

NOTE.—The same change takes place in all languages. Cf. in the English: *refer, referring; compel, compelled; man, manned; stir, stirring; stab, stabbed; &c.* In the Hebrew, letters so contracted receive a compensative Dagesh (cf. סְבִּה, קְלִי); in the Arabic, a Teshdid (ثَدَد, حَسَّ). In the Abyssinian Languages they have no mark for this gemination; but in pronouncing the contracted syllable, the voice dwells on it for the same length of time as it would on the non-contracted two syllables.

E. The same change takes place in the conjugations of Verbs ending in **ת:** in the Second Person Plural, and in a few other instances; e.g.

**Մֵת:** "We became," for **Մֵתִים::**    **Պַנִּים:** **מַנִּים:** &c.

### 3. Elision.

A complete Elision, i.e. ejection without compensation, takes place—

A. At the end of certain words, with letters of the sixth order, which are not, or scarcely, pronounced; e.g. **ՈՎԱ:** for **ՈՎԱՅ:** "wax."    **ՈՎ:** for **ՈՎՅ:** "pencil."    **ԿՅՅ:** "but," for the Eth. and Tig. **ԿՅՅՔ::**

B. With the **Բ:** Relative Pronoun, and the **Բ:** of the Genitive Case, when Prepositions are prefixed to or precede the word; e.g. **ՈՐԴԻՒ:** **ՈՒ:** "In the house of thy brother, which I have seen"; instead of **ՈՐԲԻՒ:** **ՈՒ:** **ՈՐՈՇԾՄԱ:** **ՈՒ::**    **ԿՅՅ:** **ԴԻՒ:** instead of **ԿՅՅ:** **ԲԴԻՒ:** "As thou art commanded."

C. With the Preformatives **Հ:** and **Դ:** in Verbs and verbal derivations, beginning with **Հ:** and **Դ::** e.g.

**ՀՔԸՆԱՍ:** "I do";    **ՀԽԸՆԱՍ:** "I bind";    **ՀՈԽԳՆԱՍ:** "I order to write"; instead of **ՀՔԸՆԱՍ:** **ՀԽԸՆԱՍ:** and **ՀՈԽԳՆԱՍ::** **ԴՓՈՂԱՆՍ:** "thou receivest";    **ԴՄԵԴԼԻՆՍ:** "you will be beaten"; instead of **ԴԴՓՈՂԱՆՍ:** and **ԴԴՄԵԴԼԻՆՍ::**

D. The Preformative **Դ::**, with the negative **Հ::**, is often suppressed before **Դ:** **Դ:** **Ո:** **Ձ:** **Ձ:** **Ո:** **Ո:** **Ձ:** and **Ո::** e.g.

**ՀՃԵ:** for **ՀԴՃԵ:** "Do not write."

**ՀԹՐՈՒ:** "Do not observe"; &c.

NOTE.—To this rule may be reckoned **Ձ:** before **Ո:** in one instance: **ՈՒ:** instead of **ՈՁՒ:** "sixty."

4. *Changes produced and suffered by the letter P: and its corresponding vowels I and È.*

Some of those changes have been noticed in the preceding. Here is to be added:

A. **P:** of the sixth order, as preformative to Verbs, resolves into the mere vowel ִ, when any letter of the same order is prefixed; e.g.

| instead of       | instead of        |
|------------------|-------------------|
| <b>ԱՌՃ:</b>      | <b>ՃՃՌՃ:</b>      |
| <b>ՀՅԵՄՑ:</b>    | <b>ՅԵՅՅԵՄՑ:</b>   |
| <b>ԻՖԿ:</b>      | <b>ՖԿԻՎ:</b>      |
| <b>ՆՈՒՋՈՎԾԻ:</b> | <b>ՈՋՈՎՆՈՎԾԻ:</b> |
|                  | &c.               |
|                  | &c.               |

B. Under the same circumstances, **P:** not only remains, but, for the sake of assimilation, changes the preceding letter into one of the third order; e.g.

**Ա.ՔՐԾՊ:** **Պ.ՔՃՎ:** **ՀՅԵՔՓՄ:** &c.

C. The Vowel I, when applied, changes the following letters:

|                           |                                         |                                                   |                           |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Ո:</b> into <b>Պ::</b> | <b>Ո:</b> and <b>Ո:</b> into <b>Ո::</b> | <b>Տ:</b> into <b>Դ::</b>                         | <b>Ի:</b> into <b>Կ::</b> |
| <b>Խ:</b> into <b>Կ::</b> | <b>Ք:</b> into <b>Ջ::</b>               | <b>Թ:</b> <b>Ճ:</b> and <b>Թ:</b> into <b>Ջ::</b> |                           |

FOR

|                                             |                              |
|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>ԿՋ:</b> "painter" . . . . .              | <b>ԿՃ:</b>                   |
| <b>ԿԵՋ:</b> "regent" . . . . .              | <b>ԿԵՎ:</b>                  |
| <b>ԿՄՋ:</b> "answer" . . . . .              | <b>ԿՄՎ:</b>                  |
| <b>ԴՄՅԱԼՈՒ:</b> "thou (f.) wilt be beaten," | <b>ԴՄՅԱՆՈՒ:</b>              |
| <b>ԴՔՅԱԼՈՒ:</b> "thou (f.) wilt be saved,"  | <b>ԴՔՅԱՆՈՒ:</b>              |
| <b>ԿՀ:</b> "prince" . . . . .               | <b>ԿՀ:</b>                   |
| <b>ՈՎՃ:</b> "parent" . . . . .              | <b>ՈՎՃ:</b>                  |
| <b>ՈՄՔ:</b> "giver" . . . . .               | <b>ՈՄՔ:</b>                  |
| <b>ՓԿՃՔ:</b> "piece" . . . . .              | <b>ՓԿՃՔ:</b> or <b>ՓԿՃԹ:</b> |
| <b>ՍՄՎՔ:</b> "rebel" . . . . .              | <b>ՍՄՎՔ:</b>                 |

NOTE.—Under the same circumstances, **P:** changes those letters into the fourth order.

D. When words ending in *i* and *é* receive any of the heavy suffixes (*gravia*), or the auxiliary **ՃՃ:** at the end, the third or fifth order is generally changed into the sixth, and **P:** follows:

**ՈՃ:** "ox." **ՈԾ.ՔՄՓ:** and **ՈՃ.ՔՄՓ:**

**ՄՊՓ:** "guardian," "protector." **ՄՊՓՔԻՑ:** "our protector."

**ԴԱՐԱՎՈՒՆ:** "thou (*fem.*) observest," for **ԴԱՐԱՓ:** ՀԱՐԱ::

**ԹԱՐԱՎՈՒՆ:** "I observe," for **ԹԱՐԱՓ:** ՀԱՐԱ::

E. When letters of the fifth order are shortened, they are changed into the third; when they are prolonged, they are changed into the fourth; and the original vowel *e* or *i* is represented by **Պ::**

**ԽԾ:** "he went." Imp. **ԽԾ:** go!

**ՌԵՄ:** "he sold."

**ՏՐԻՐՄ:** "he bought and sold," "carried on commerce."

5. *Changes produced and suffered by the Letter Ո: and its corresponding Vowels U and O.*

The letter **Ո:** is often contracted into the vowel *o*, and still further into *ü*.

A. **Ո:** is contracted into *o*. This occurs,

(a) With the second radical in verbs:

**ՓՄԱ:** for **ՓՈՄԱ::** **ԽՀ:** for **ԽՈՀՀ::** **ՃՄԱ:** for **ՃՈՄԱ::**

(b) In substantives:

**ՈՎՈՒՅ:** "gift," is contracted into **ՈՎՈՒ:**

**ՔԱՅՈՒ:** "power," into **ՔԱՅՈՒ:**

**ԽԵՅՈՒ:** "life," into **ԽԵՅՈՒ:**

**ԽՃՈՒ:** "prayer," into **ԽՃՈՒ:**

B. **Ո:** and *o* are further contracted into *ü*.

(a) In the subjunctive, imperative, and constructive in verbs:

**ՔՓՄԱ:** "let him stand." **ՔՄԱ:** "stand!" **ՔՄԱՎՈ:** "he is standing."

(b) With the suffixed pronoun 3d person sing. masc., which, to nouns ending in a letter belonging to the sixth order, is attached as *ü*; but after a long vowel, and in verbs as **ՈՒ:**, except after an *ü*, where it is changed for **Դ::**

**ՈՒ:** "his house."

**ԴԵՒՈ:** "his master."

**ԹՈՓՈՒ:** "he observed it." **ԹՈՒԵՒ:** "they beat him."

C. *o* and *ü*, when an *ā* is joined to them, change the gutturals and palatals into diphthongs of the fourth order, and put other letters into the sixth order, adding **Փ::**

**ՈԱ:** "his saying."

**ՈԱՎՈ:** "he is saying."

**ՈԹԱ:** "I gave."

**ՈԹՁՄՈ:** "I gave them."

**ՈՉՈՒ:** "senate."

**ՈՉՉՄՈ:** "their senate."

D. **Φ:** having been reduced to the vowel *o* in the radicals of verbs, is restored again when the first radical is amplified:

**ጥቃወሙ:** "he stood against," "resisted," from **ቀሙ:** "he stood."

#### 6. Changes occurring with the Diphthongs.

Diphthongs of the first order (**Φ-:** ተ-፡ ገ-፡ ጥ-፡) are, when lengthened, changed into the fourth (**Φ፡ ተ፡ ገ፡ ጥ፡**) ; when shortened, into the sixth (**Φ፡ ተ፡ ገ፡ ጥ፡**) order :

**ቀ-ጠ-ረ፡** "he counted."

Lengthened

**ጥቃውረ፡** "he made accounts."      **ይቋሁጠረ፡** "let him count."

Shortened

#### 7. Reduplication of Letters.

Reduplication of letters takes place in the formation of nouns and verbs, generally with a design of giving intensity to the original meaning of the word, when the second or third radical is repeated :

**ታቶስ፡** "small."

**ታቶቶስ፡** "very small."

**ታለቅ፡** "great."

**ታለለቅ፡** "very great."

**መለሰ፡** "he brought back."

**ተመለለሰ፡** "he walked," i.e. "went and returned," "went up and down."

**ተመለሰ፡** "he returned."

**ከደረገ፡** "he did," "performed."

**ከደራደግ፡** "a great work."

#### 8. Exchange of Letters.

The following letters are frequently changed one for another, as belonging to the same organ, or at least being similar in sound.

A. *Gutturals*.—**ሀ፡** for **ሻ፡**    **ሻ፡** for **ሀ፡**    **ሐ፡** and **ኩ፡**    **ኩ፡** and **ሐ፡** for **ኩ፡**    They write :

|                                             |                                               |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <b>ኩረድ፡</b> "he rested," for <b>በረድ፡</b>    | <b>ሻበሽ፡</b> "Abyssinia," for <b>በብሽ፡</b>      |
| <b>ሻዘኝ፡</b> "he regretted," for <b>በዘኝ፡</b> | <b>ኩፈሩ፡</b> "he was ashamed," for <b>ገፈሩ፡</b> |
| <b>ሆነ፡</b> "he became," for <b>በነ፡</b>      | <b>ሻይ፡</b> "he went," for <b>በይ፡</b>          |
| <b>ኩለ፡</b> "behind," for <b>በለ፡</b>         |                                               |

B. *Gutturals and Palatals*.—**ሀ፡ ከ፡** and **ኩ፡ ክ፡** for **ኩ፡ ክ፡** e.g.

**ኩይኩ፡** in vulgar language, for **በይበ፡** "I go."

**መኩክል፡** and **መኩክል፡** for **መኩክል፡** "the middle."

C. *Palatals and Dentals*.—**ፁ፡** interchanges occasionally with **ጠ፡ መ፡** and **ኂ፡**    **ኩንፁጥ፡** for **ኩንጠጥ፡** "wood."

**ሻነዋንጥጥልሁ፡** for **ሻነጠንጥጥልሁ፡** "I will harass them."

Ps. xviii. 38.

D. *Palatals and Dentals*.—**ئ**: and **غ**: and **ڦ**:: e.g.

**አረዳ:** “to be old,” for **አረን::**

**תַּזְבִּג:** for **תַּזְבִּגְגָה:** “to rustle.”

**ՃԴՀ:** “pound,” for **ԿԴՀ:**    **ՄԾՀ:** “to please,” for **ԻԾՀ:**

**ጥወሻለት**: “perhaps,” for **ጥወሻለሁ**::   **ተብሩ**: “to redeem,”

for **TnG**:

**Φ-ζΩ:** “to cut,” for Φ-ζΧ::      Χ·Π: “quarrel,” for Θ·Π:

F. *Linguals and Labials*.—Where ι: precedes η: ρ: and γ:, it is, as in the Greek and in other languages, exchanged for ου: a liquid of the same order.

አጥብ-በለታት: “flute,” for አንብ-በለታት::

**ወጪ&ት:** “a sieve,” for **ወን&ት::**

**ΛΑΜΠΙΝΗ:** “a small tent,” for the Greek **λαμπήνη**.

G. *Labials*.—**oo**: and **u**:: **oo**: and **ø**:: **u**: and **ø**::

**חַמְרָה**: “rain,” for **חַמְרָא**:

**ΦΩΠΟΣ:** and **ΦΩΜΟΣ:** “chair,” for **ΣΩΤΗΡΟΣ:**

**፳፻**: “to remain,” (the **ሺ**: resolved into the vowel *o*) from the Eth. **ሻሺ**:

9. As for the liquids **A**: **B**: **C**: and the changes to which they are liable, they having been embodied in the preceding remarks, nothing further remains to be said concerning them.

## **10. Transposition, and further Contraction of Letters.**

Takes place merely in low language.

**መርጥ**: “light,” “candle,” for **መ-ገኘት** ::

**ՓՇՈՎ:** for **ՓՇԿՎ:** “nug-oil.”

**ՃԻՆԸ:** for **ՃՊԻԸ:** contracted from **ՃՊԻՆՈՒԸ:** “God.”

**ክርስት:** “Christ.” **ክስቶን:** and **ክ-ስ-ተ-ን:** for **ክርስ-ቲ-ኖን:** “Christian.”

## PART II.—ETYMOLOGY.

## ON THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

## PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

IN the Semitic Languages, it has been the custom (which also Ludolf has followed, in both his Grammars, of the Ethiopic and of the Amharic Languages) to class the different Parts of Speech under three heads; *viz.* Nouns, Verbs, and Particles; beginning the Etymological part of the Grammar with the Verb, as containing the roots of the whole language. But modern Grammarians have, for important reasons, adopted another course; following the practice of some ancient Arabic and Hebrew Scholars: and as that tripartition presents several inconveniences, especially to such as are unacquainted with the other Semitic Dialects, we divide the Amharic Language into Nouns, Pronouns, Verbs, Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions, and Interjections. None of the Abyssinian Languages possess the Article.

2. It will, in a great measure, facilitate the study of the language, before we enter on each part of speech in particular, to premise a few general observations on the original forms of words; because it is in them, and in the manner in which from them the various formations have proceeded, that the peculiarity of every language consists. We must observe, however, that the Amharic not being an original but a derived language (see Introduction, I. III.), we must have frequent recourse to the Ethiopic; and it presents several formations which, in the present state of its knowledge, cannot yet be accounted for.

3. Now the principal elements—as it were the skeleton—of words in any language, consists in the *Consonants*, which are animated by the different Vowels, according to the purposes of formation, flexion, and dialect: and in speaking therefore of original forms, we must look, not to the Vowels, but to the consonants.\* This, when applied to the Amharic, where Vowels are constantly attached to Consonants, signifies that the various orders of a letter do not come into consideration, but the letter itself.

4. One characteristic feature of the Semitic Languages is the prevalence

\* This is more clear in the Hebrew, Arabic, and Syriac; in which the Vowels are represented by certain marks above and below the line, which are more frequently omitted than written.

of triliteral forms, which are partly derived from original biliterals, and partly amplified to quadri- and pluri-literals; but, for the greater part, are original, and form the majority. This peculiarity applies also to the Abyssinian Languages; although not to the Amharic with equal force, as to its parent, the Ethiopic.

5. We do not intend to enter into any inquiry about the logical priority of the Parts of Speech; although we believe, that, in the natural development of the mind, the Noun has the precedence before the Verb; but in the grammatical formation of the Amharic Language, the Verb claims the priority, since all its roots are reducible to the first order, called Gēz; i.e. "original." For the sake of convenience, however, we begin with the Noun, and follow the order stated under § 1.

## ~~~~~

### CHAP. I.

#### ON THE NOUNS.

In speaking of the Nouns, we have to consider them according to their *Formation* (termination, species), *Gender*, *Number*, and *Declension*.

#### SECTION I.

##### *Formation of Nouns.*

1. As to the *FORMATION* of Nouns, they are either Simple, Augmented, or Compounds; either *Primitive* or *Derived*. Concerning their termination, they may end in any of the seven orders, except the first. We consider them, first, in respect to their *forms*, as simple, augmented, or compound; secondly, to their *formation*, as primitive or derivative.

2. *Simple forms*; consisting of two, three, or four letters.

#### A. *Biliterals.*

(a) Ending in the second order:

**ኩድ**: bad.    **ብኩ**: much.    **ጥሬ**: full.

**ቻጽ**: clean.    **ብሩ**: clear.    **ቻሪ**: pure.

**ሙወ**: covetous, a miser.    **ጥጥ**: spices.

NOTE.—Most of these forms are Ethiopic Verbal Adjectives, originating from, or rather representing, the Passive Participle.

(b) Ending in the third order, generally signifying an agent:

**ብራ**: workman, diligent.    **መራ**: guide.    **ብራ**: wide, spacious.

**ዘራ**: sower, seedsman.    **ፈቀ**: tanner.    **ዘራ**: ebony.

**ባበ**: the inside.    **ጠበ**: current in trade.

## (c) Ending in the fourth order:

|                        |                             |                               |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>ՀՌ:</b> a corpse.   | <b>ՊՐ:</b> rent, wages.     | <b>ՈՒ:</b> smell.             |
| <b>ՈԾ:</b> emptiness.  | <b>ՈԿ:</b> ransom.          | <b>ՈՎ:</b> summer.            |
| <b>ԻՌ:</b> equivalent. | <b>ՓԿ:</b> mockery.         | <b>ՓՎ:</b> price.             |
| <b>ՂՎ:</b> body.       | <b>ՌԾ:</b> cloth.           | <b>ԱՅԾ:</b> sole of the foot. |
| <b>ԸՐՎ:</b> betrothed. | <b>ՋՎ:</b> water.           | <b>ՃՎ:</b> dumb.              |
| <b>ՃԴ:</b> thief.      | <b>ՃՓ:</b> vessel, utensil. | <b>ՃՄ:</b> dinner.            |
| <b>ՄԵՐ:</b> evening.   | <b>ՄԵՐ:</b> flesh.          | <b>ՀԵՐ:</b> course.           |
| <b>ՈՇ:</b> work.       | <b>ՓՇ:</b> knife.           |                               |

## (d) Ending in the fifth order:

|                               |                           |                             |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>ՈՒԱ:</b> servant.          | <b>ԺՎ:</b> the king's ma- | <b>Փէ:</b> poetry.          |
| <b>ՄՈՒ:</b> a certain mea-    | <b>ԺԵ:</b> jesty.         | <b>ՈւՀ:</b> news.           |
| sure.                         | <b>ՈՆ:</b> June.          | <b>ՄՐԱ:</b> full-grown ele- |
| <b>ՓՈ:</b> butter, oil.       | <b>ՈՇ:</b> ox.            | phant.                      |
| <b>ՃՔ:</b> disease.           | <b>ԴՒ:</b> time.          | <b>ՔՀ:</b> garment.         |
| <b>ԴՀ:</b> genuine, original. | <b>ԳՀ:</b> fruit.         |                             |

## (e) Ending in the sixth order. These are the most numerous.

|                                      |                      |                        |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| <b>ՍՀ:</b> silk.                     | <b>ՓՅ:</b> day.      | <b>ՓՅ:</b> equity.     |
| <b>ԱՐՄ:</b> cow.                     | <b>ՄՅ:</b> belly.    | <b>ՈՒԱ:</b> pearl.     |
| <b>ՃՒ:</b> measure.                  | <b>ՃՈ:</b> heart.    | <b>ՃՎ:</b> law.        |
| <b>ՄՄ-Ք:</b> warm.                   | <b>ՃՄ:</b> child.    | <b>ՄԿ:</b> honey.      |
| <b>ՄՄՓ:</b> coarse woollen<br>cloth. | <b>ՄՄ-Ի:</b> banana. | <b>ԱՀ:</b> grass.      |
| <b>ՀՀ:</b> rice.                     | <b>ԳՄԴ:</b> death.   | <b>ՈԴՄ:</b> name.      |
| <b>ՈՎ:</b> man.                      | <b>Հ-Ո:</b> hunger.  | <b>Ռ-ԴՄ:</b> governor. |
|                                      | <b>ՈՒ-Ո:</b> woman.  | <b>ՓՈ:</b> priest.     |

## (f) Ending in the seventh order:

|                                     |                             |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>ՄՊՀՐ:</b> a fillip.              | <b>ՃԲ:</b> a sort of bread. | <b>ՀՌ:</b> curds, cheese.           |
| <b>ՔՅ:</b> hen.                     | <b>ԱՐՄ:</b> a third.        | <b>Դ-Ի:</b> a day's march.          |
| <b>ԴՅ:</b> small thatched<br>house. | <b>ՔՅ:</b> ear.             | <b>ԻՐ:</b> cosso (a medi-<br>cine). |
|                                     | <b>ՓՈՐ:</b> fried grain.    |                                     |

## B. Triliterals.

## (a) Ending in the second order are rare:

**ՊԵՐ:** meeting.      **ՈԽԾ-ՈԽԾ:** harmonious.

## (b) Ending in the third order, the second letter being generally of the

fourth order. The latter, if their first radical is of the first order, are to be considered as Active Substantives or Adjectives; if of the sixth, as Passive.

|                           |                        |                                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <b>ԱՐՄՎ:</b> groom.       | <b>ԱՓՄՎ:</b> gatherer. | <b>ՄՍԿԻՇ:</b> merciful.                |
| <b>ՄՈՒԴՎ:</b> counsellor. | <b>ՄՍՂՈՎ:</b> steward. | <b>ՈՒԴՎ:</b> drunkard.                 |
| <b>ՈՇԵՎ:</b> flying.      | <b>ՆՁՓՎ:</b> mason.    | <b>ԽԵՎ:</b> speaker.                   |
| <b>ԻՄՓՎ:</b> rapacious.   | <b>ԴՄՎՋՎ:</b> scholar. | <b>ՀԱՎՃՎ:</b> passenger,<br>passer-by. |

To this class also belong those words whose third letter has been changed from the third to the sixth order. **ՄԱԼԻ:** "the returner," "restorer"; **ԳՄՂԱՌ:** "answer," "return"; **Փ-Հ.ԾՎ:** "cutter"; **Փ-Հ.ԾՎ:** "a cut," "piece," &c., for **ՄԱԼԻ:** **ԳՄՂԱՌ:** **Փ-Հ.ԾՎ:** **Փ-Հ.ԾՎ:::**

(c) Ending in the fourth order:

|                          |                               |                             |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>ԱՄՄՎ:</b> entreaty.   | <b>ԱՌ-Ֆ:</b> intellect.       | <b>ՄՖԻՂ:</b> oath.          |
| <b>ՄՄԴՅՎ:</b> twins.     | <b>ՄՄՀԵՎ:</b> bitter.         | <b>ՄՄԻՂ:</b> affliction.    |
| <b>ՄՄՑՎ:</b> sour, acid. | <b>ՄՄՀՅՎ:</b> sleeping-place. | <b>ՄՄՄՊ:</b> the lungs.     |
| <b>ՄԱԲՎ:</b> place.      | <b>ՄՄՍԼ:</b> potter's earth.  | <b>ՄՄՀՅՎ:</b> remainder.    |
| <b>ՄԱԲՎ:</b> slave.      | <b>ՄՄԼԱ:</b> linseed.         | <b>ՄՄԻՄ:</b> a spot.        |
| <b>ՀԱԽՎ:</b> a chief.    | <b>ՄՄԵՎ:</b> height.          | <b>ՈՎՀԻ:</b> sycamore-tree. |

(d) Ending in the fifth order:

|                                  |                              |                           |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>ՄԱՓՎ:</b> substance, essence. | <b>Գ.ՔՄՎ:</b> perfection.    | <b>ԳՄՂԱՎ:</b> similitude. |
| <b>ՄԱԲՎ:</b> trinity.            | <b>ՃՊՈՎ:</b> intellect.      | <b>ԳՔՄՎ:</b> Saturday.    |
| <b>Բ-Ը-ԻՎ:</b> blessing.         | <b>ՈՎՅՎ:</b> wheat.          | <b>ՈՎՀՈՎ:</b> myrrh.      |
| <b>ՓՄՊՎ:</b> young he-goat.      | <b>ՀԺԻՎ:</b> August (month). | <b>ՕՔ-ՄՎ:</b> age.        |
| <b>ՔՅՎ:</b> cow's hide.          | <b>ԿՄՎՃՎ:</b> song.          | <b>ՔՔՓՎ:</b> question.    |
|                                  | <b>Դ-ՄՎՃՎ:</b> hippopotamus. |                           |

NOTE.—It will be observed, that those Nouns, whose first radical is of the sixth, the second of the fourth, and the third of the fifth order, are generally Abstract Nouns of Quality.

(e) Ending in the sixth order:

α Nouns whose three letters are of the same order, generally denoting essence, quality, action, or concrete substances:

|                            |                         |                          |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>Ճ-Ա-ՌՎ:</b> cloth.      | <b>Ճ-Ո-ՎՎ:</b> change.  | <b>ԳՄԿ-ԾՎ:</b> fountain. |
| <b>ՀԿՐՄՎ:</b> prohibition. | <b>ԳԿՐԾՎ:</b> election. | <b>ՈՎՃԵՎ:</b> war.       |
| <b>ՄՆՃՎ:</b> image.        | <b>ԾԻՐԻՎ:</b> impure.   | <b>ՈՎԾՎ:</b> coldness.   |
| <b>ԻՎԹՎ:</b> ornament.     | <b>ՔՎՃՎ:</b> cookery.   | <b>ՀՄՎՃՎ:</b> corn.      |

**ጥርጉ:** remainder.

**ክምር:** a heap.

**ድርቅ:** dryness.

**ማጠሪ:** addition.

**ኅርድ:** judgment.

**ጊጌ:** eagle.

**ሰዕድ:** a fold, time, turn.

**ጥልቅ:** depth.

**ግምብ:** tower.

**ክምድ:** a pair.

**ጥንበ:** pregnancy,

fœtus.

**ልጥር:** a pound.

**β** Nouns whose first letter is the first, and the second and third of the sixth order, generally denoting qualities, concrete substantives, or adjectives:

**ለምዶ:** hide.

**ረሱም:** long.

**ስተር:** a stick.

**አጥር:** lentils.

**ሀዋም:** pillar.

**ገብስ:** barley.

**ለምግ:** leprosy.

**Փንድ:** horn.

**ተከል:** a plant.

**ነብት:** property.

**ዘውድ:** coronet.

**ለጥር:** hair.

**መልሽ:** form.

**በርድ:** cold.

**ንግድ:** leopard.

**ወንድ:** a male.

**ደረቅ:** dry land.

**ፈተል:** thread.

**γ** Nouns whose first and third letters are of the sixth, and second of the second order. They are of Ethiopic formation, being generally Verbal Adjectives and Substantives, the same as § 2. A. a.

**ቍዎች:** dead.

**ቅዴሳ:** holy.

**ንገሥ:** king.

**እነሳ:** half, equal.

**ሰበድ:** proud.

**ፍጋዕ:** fourth.

**ብሩር:** silver.

**ንጂድ:** pure.

**ወንዝ:** execrated.

**ሰዕድ:** blind.

**ቅበሻ:** anointed.

**ተስተ፡ጥ:** humble.

**ንፃጋ:** avaricious.

**ጋጥሙ:** cursed.

**ንጂጥሙ:** majestic.

**δ** Nouns whose second letter is of the third order. They are of Ethiopic origin, and generally Adjective.

**ሙራር:** bitter.

**ቀልል:** light.

**መባብ:** wise.

**ሙያግ:** sour.

**ነበረድ:** heavy.

**ዘበብ:** narrow.

**ደቀቅ:** thin.

**ማሕዝ:** mighty.

To the same class belong those Adjectives whose middle letter has been changed from the third into the sixth order:

**ቀይን:** "thin"; **አቆር:** "short"; **ረሱም:** "long"; instead of  
**ቀዕን:** **እጽር:** **ደዘም::**

Exceptions are:

**ቀልብ:** "mould"; **ቀሚስ:** "shirt"; **ነበረድ:** "prophet"; **ዘበብ:** "grape"; &c.

**ε** Nouns whose middle letter is of the fourth order. They are generally Substantives, though sometimes Adjectives.

**ՃՈՐ:** custom.

**ՃՈՐԴ:** disease.

**ՄՈՒՌ:** tongue.

**ՃՈՒ:** halter.

**ՃՈՒՅ:** itch.

**ՄՈՒՅ:** barren.

**ՃՈՐՈ:** reins, bridle.

**ՃՈՅ:** infant.

ζ Nouns whose middle letter is of the fifth order: **ՈՂՅ:** **ՃՈՐԴ:** **ՄՈՒՅԴ:**

η Nouns whose middle letter is of the seventh order: **ՃՊՈԴ:**

θ Nouns Verbal, ending in the feminine —Դ:: They will be mentioned hereafter, when speaking of Derived Nouns.

(f) Nouns ending in the seventh order. They are all Substantives.

**ՃՓՈ:** lamentation.

**ՃՄՈՒ:** a pole.

**ՓՈՅ:** jackal.

**ՈՓՈՂ:** mule.

**ՓՈՒԵ:** awl.

**ՃԸՆ:** a dērgo.

**ԳՄՀԻ:** exile.

**ՄՄՈՒ:** a canal.

**ՓԿՅԱ:** girl, virgin.

**ՆՀՐԻ:** leaven.

**ԳՓՈՒ:** tempest.

**ԴՄՈՒ:** water-jar.

**ԳՄՅԻ:** ague.

**ՌՈՒՐ:** wire.

**ՈՀՅ:** hail.

**ՌՈՅ:** drum.

**ԽՀՅ:** poisonous

serpent.

**ՎՀՅ:** throat.

### C. Quadrilaterals :

There are none ending in the second order.

(a) Single Nouns ending in the third order. Such as are derived from any derivation of Verbs are not included here.

**Ո-ՈՒՈ:** gatherer. **ՈՆ ԹՓ:** a cleaver.

**ՈՆՉՓ:** a split. **ՈԾՈՃ:** a plunderer.

(b) Ending in the fourth order:

**ՄՆԿԿ:** jaw.

**ԱՀՐԱ:** beam, car-

**ԲՌՄ-ՈՀ:** a kind of

**ՈՒՅՊ:** deceit.

riage.

pulse.

**ՃՈՒԾ:** a learned man.

**ՀՈՅՅ:** a whip.

**Խ-ՈՒԽ:** grass-

**Դ-ԸՄՈՒ:** a young man.

hopper.

**ՀՓՄՈՒ:** leather bag

(c) Ending in the fifth order:

**ՃԹՈԼՄԾ:** verdure. **ՄՎՅԴԱ:** a rabbit. **ՀԿՃԵ:** clemency.

**ՈՒՄՊՈՂ:** an elder. **ՈԾՈՒ:** Cayenne pep-

**ԴԿՃՄԾ:** translation.

**Ճ-ՈՒԾՈ:** bill of account.

per.

(d) Ending in the sixth order:

**ՈԹՈԼԹԾ:** green. **ՄՄՅՅԾ:** village.

**ԳՄՈՒՅՆ:** poor.

**ԳՄՅԱՀԾ:** adultery. **ԱՃՈՒԾ:** chain.

**ՀՊՀՅ:** mud.

|                        |                           |                       |
|------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>ሰንዘር:</b> a span.   | <b>ሰራተኞች:</b> sponge.     | <b>ቀጠበር:</b> yoke.    |
| <b>ቅንድብ:</b> eye-brow. | <b>ተንከሳል:</b> shrewdness. | <b>አሽነር:</b> a youth. |
| <b>ሰጠጣጥ:</b> side.     | <b>ደንም-በር:</b> frontier.  | <b>ጋጊዜል:</b> virgin.  |

**(e) Ending in the seventh order:**

D. There are not many Simple Nouns of five and more letters: some of those which exist we will mention here:

|                                |                       |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| ԿՇԵՐ: green.                   | ԺՄԱԼՄՊԱ: vegetables.  |
| ԴՅԵՐՈՒ: supporter of the head. | ՀՈՃԱՌԱ: flame.        |
| ՀՅՓՈՂԱ: egg.                   | ՀՅՓՈՂԱ: sleep.        |
| ՀՈՓԵՐՈՒ: rhinoceros.           | ՔՅՈՒԹԱ: chamber-maid. |
| ԽՇԵՐԾԵՐ: chequered.            |                       |

3. In speaking of *Augmented Nouns*, we do not refer to those casual additions they receive by inseparable Prepositions at the beginning, or Pronouns at the end; but we speak of those augmentations at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end, by which their original signification is modified. In order, however, not to fall into an unnecessary repetition, we postpone this subject till we come to speak of *Derived Nouns*. (See 5.c.)

4. Compounds are formed (*a*) from the Ethiopic *status constructus*; the *nomen regens* and the *nomen rectum* being combined into one word, as in our "house-door" for "house's door," only the reverse of our order. In the Ethiopic, as in the Hebrew, the word (nominative) which precedes, and which, according to our ideas, should have the nominative form, is changed; and the word (genitive) which follows, and which we should expect to be changed, is not changed at all. As this peculiarity does not affect the Amharic Language any further, we do not enter into it, but content ourselves with giving only a few instances.

| Compounds.                                                 | Analysis.                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| ገለጠት: master of the house, self.                           | ገል: master, and ቃት: house.                       |
| ገልጻይ: fellow, associate.                                   | ገል: . . . . ገንዘብ: bread.                         |
| ቤተሰብ: { domestic, one belonging<br>to a house or family. } | ቤተ: house . . . { ተብ: Eth. i.q. Amh.<br>ቤዕ: man. |
| ቤተንጻ: state-room, parlour.                                 | ቤተ: house . . . እንጻ: king.                       |

Thus are many Ethiopic words compounded, especially their Christian names; e.g. ዳይል: ማርያም: Haila Maryam, "the Power of Mary," commonly Hailu; ገብረ: አገዛእል-በተር: or ገብረ: አምላክ: Gabra

Egziabehér, or Gabra Amlák, contr. Gabramlák, commonly Gabru, or Zäegziabher, or Zäämlák, "Servant of God," &c.

(b) From Amharic words, combining either noun with noun, or the noun with any other part of speech:

*Compounds.*

፩፻፻: left-hand.

፩፻፻: free-will, liberty.

፩፻፻: empty-handed.

፩፻፻: O my Lord!

*Analysis.*

፩፻: and ፻፻::

፩፻: (dominion?) & ፻፻: hand.

፩፻: empty, & ፻፻::

፩፻: mine, & ፻፻: Lord, master.

5. *Primitive Nouns*, strictly speaking, are those whose origin cannot be traced to any other source but to themselves. Now there are a good number in the Amharic Language which are easily recognised as Primitive in this sense; but there are many others which can be called so only in a relative acceptation of the word, because in the Ethiopic, from whence they are taken, they are not Primitive; although either the original word is not current in the Amharic, or the mode of its derivation is not accordant with the idiom of that language. The first of these two latter clauses induces us to consider a number of Amharic Nouns as comparatively Primitive; whilst the second constrains us to leave to others the same derivative character which they have in the Ethiopic.

As the Primitive Nouns are found only among the *simple* forms, we refer to the above exhibition, N°. 2.

A. *Biliterals*:

Class (a) is entirely derivative.

Class (b) also.

Class (c) contains a number of Primitives; e.g. የብ: በድ: በክ: በጋ: ክሳ: ወን: ገለ: ስመ: ወመ: ወን: ወን: እን: መጥ: ደቸ: ለባ: ቅራ::

(d) *Primitives of the fourth class*: ማል: ቁጽ: መሰ: ተኑ: ገዘ: መል: ቅራ::

(e) In the fifth class, the majority are Primitives.

(f) In the sixth class, መሬል: ደር: ደር: ክሬ: ክሬ: ደር::

B. *Trilateral Primitives*:

In class (c), መንጥ: ስምዕ: ስሁላ: ባርያ: ተልግ: መስሳ: ነዋጥ: ወርካ:

In class (d), ተንድ: ክከበ: ስምለ: ድንድ: ክርብ: ወመለ: ስምጻ: ገመራ:

In class (e), almost the whole of the first (α); about half of the second (β);

Ը: filix mas.  
 Ա: stairs, ladder.  
 Յ: God.  
 Պ: sort of gourds.  
 Կ: nail.  
 Ք: k'welqu'āl.  
 Ե: bedstead.  
 Ձ: yolk of an egg.  
 Ց: capricorn.  
 Հ: small elephants' tusk.  
 Պ: unfermented wine.  
 Ւ: obelisk.  
 Խ: adultery.  
 Վ: inquiry.  
 Պ: yellow pigeon.  
 Ջ: shrewdness, craftiness.  
 Շ: moth.  
 Ե: span.  
 Ի: back-door.  
 Զ: acrimonious fruit.  
 ~~~~~  
 5. ult. Մ::
 Պ: a certain quadruped.
 Ո: flat basket.
 Ե: sort of beads.
 Թ: tobacco.
 Հ: raw flesh.
 Փ: harp, lyre.
 ԱՐ: an anthelmintic.
 Փ: glass.
 Ֆ: kind of marmots.
 : pewter.

1. ult. Կ::
ՀԸՊՀԴ: a parasitic plant.
ՀՆՓՓՂ: kind of lizards.
ԸԸՊՈՒՔ: breast-bone.
ԸՄ-ԸԸԸԸՂ: weasel.
 ~~~~~  
 2. ult. Կ::  
**ՍՀՀՀՂ**: green.  
**ԴՀԾՊՂ**: a certain bird.  
 ~~~~~  
 3. ult. Վ::
ՀՊՄԳԽԱԾՈ: saddle's crupper.
ՀՆԻՈՂՈ: measles.
ՓԿԴՔԾԴ: a small handful.
ՓՎԾԾՊՄԾՊԴ: ankle-bone.
ՀՆԾԾԾՊԾՊԴ: lap-wing.
ՄՃՈՎԾ: glutton.
ՀՈԾԵՎԾ: flame.
ՀՊՈՎՂ: white horse.
ՀՆՓԱԾ: egg.
ՀՆԻԾԾԾ: a weed.
ԸՄՉԻՌԵՑ: chin.
ԸՄՓԼԾՄԴ: large knife.
ՈՆՉՈԾԾ: game of chess.
ՀՆՓՃԾ: sleep.
ՃՒՈՒՈ: light-minded.
ԸՄՉԻ-ՀՈՎԾ: carriage.
ՓԿԴՔԾՊԾ: curled hair.
ՀՊՈՒՔՆԻԾՄ: martingal.
 ~~~~~  
 4. ult. Մ::  
**Հ-ՈԾՊՎԾ**: sort of plaited hair.  
**ՀՆՊ-ՈԾ**: sort of bread.



none of the third ( $\gamma$ ); few of the fourth ( $\delta$ ), ΦΔ.Π: ΤΖΗ: ΦΨΩ: ΚΖΗ: ΙΩ.Ρ: ΗΩ.Π:, and fifth ( $\epsilon$ ), ΔΓ.Π: ΔΖΨΩ:; but none of the sixth ( $\zeta$ ) division.

In class (f), the greater part are Primitives.

### C. Quadrilateral Primitives:

- (a) None.

(b) **መንጠረቃ፡ ወረጃ፡ ተምብ-በራ፡ እለዚ፡ ከ-በነባ፡ ይ-በተረ፡ እቅዱ፡**

(c) Few; e.g. **መንጥል፡ በርበሩ፡**

(d) The majority.

(e) **መስጠት፡ ቅርቃዊ፡ ወደዘርፍ፡ ካንቃር፡ ይጋዋር፡**

D. Those mentioned as simple *plurilaterals* are all Primitive,

6. *Derived Forms* take their origin either from Nouns, Verbs, or Particles; and are formed in various ways, either by *contraction* (elision), or by *change*, or by *augmentation* of their letters.

A. By *Contraction* (see Part I. Ch. VII. 2.), and *Elision* (*ibid.* 3.), they are changed more seldom within the limits of the Amharic than in their transition from the Ethiopic Language into the Amharic. It takes place most frequently in Bilaterals:

|                          |      |               |  |              |         |                     |
|--------------------------|------|---------------|--|--------------|---------|---------------------|
| <b>Amb.</b>              |      | <b>Eth.</b>   |  | <b>Amb.</b>  |         | <b>Eth.</b>         |
| <b>ንጂ:</b> pure,         | from | <b>ንጂ-ስ::</b> |  | <b>ጥጋገ::</b> | dinner, | from <b>ጥጋገ-ስ::</b> |
| <b>በረ::</b> ox,          | ..   | <b>በረ-ደ::</b> |  | <b>ለጠ::</b>  | cow,    | .. <b>ለሁጠ::</b>     |
| <b>ማር::</b> honey,       | ..   | <b>ማር-ኩ::</b> |  | <b>ወረ::</b>  | grass,  | .. <b>ወሮ::</b>      |
| <b>ቅብ::</b> butter, oil, | ..   | <b>ቅብ-ሳ::</b> |  |              |         | sometimes Amharic.  |

Sometimes in Triliterals, derived from the Ethiopic Quadrilaterals:

|                                               |                            |                                                            |      |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Amh.<br><b>ብርቃ</b> : strong,<br>ገዢራ: essence, | Eth.<br>from <b>ብርቃሁ</b> : | Amh.<br><b>ሰም-ሙ</b> : harmonious,<br>from <b>ሰም-ሸም-ሱ</b> : | Eth. |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|------|

B. By *change* of one, two, or of all the primitive letters, according to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 4, 5, 7. A few instances will suffice for illustration:

| Derivative.                          | Primitive.                           |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>Φράγμα:</b> that which is before, | }                                    |
| <b>Φράση:</b> saddle's pommel,       | from <b>Φράγμα:</b> the former time. |
| <b>Φράστης:</b> Saturday,            | }                                    |
| <b>Φράστης:</b> holy,                | }                                    |
| <b>Φράστης:</b> consecration,        | from <b>Φράστης:</b> to sanctify.    |
| <b>Φράστης:</b> sanctifier,          | }                                    |

| Derivative.                          | Primitive.                                     |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <b>סְרִירָה:</b> a restorer,         | { from <b>סְרִירָה:</b> to return, bring back. |
| <b>שְׁרִירָה:</b> return, answer,    |                                                |
| <b>שְׁמִירָה:</b> likeness,          | { from <b>שְׁמִירָה:</b> to resemble.          |
| <b>שְׁמִירָה:</b> kind, resemblance, |                                                |
| <b>צָרָבָה:</b> king,                | { from <b>צָרָבָה:</b> to be king.             |
| <b>צָרָבָה:</b> regent,              |                                                |
| <b>חֵרֶבֶת:</b> hunter,              | { from <b>חֵרֶבֶת:</b> to hunt.                |
| <b>חֵרֶבֶת:</b> game,                |                                                |

C. *Augmentation* of letters in the derivation of Nouns takes place either *in the beginning* (preformation), or *in the middle* (reduplication), or *at the end* (afformation).\* The letters used for this purpose are **ሙ**: **ስ**: **ተ**: **፣**: **ቻ**: **አ**: **ወ**:: Of these, **ሙ**: **ስ**: **ተ**: **፣**: **አ**: **ወ****ለ**: and **አለተ**: are *prefixed*; and **ሙ**: **ተ**: **ቻ**: **ወ**: and **ወ**: are *affixed*. *Reduplication* takes place by repeating any of the radical letters.

**(a) Preformation:**

**to**: is used for Infinitives, and retained in Nouns derived therefrom:

**συτιφ:** the watching.

**συτιφρ**: watch-house, from **τιφρ**: to watch.

**T:** **T3:** **A:** **A3:** **A3T:** and **A3:** are retained in Nouns derived from those derivations of Verbs which have these characteristic Preformatives:

| Noun.                          | Verbal derivation.            | Radix.            |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| ተፋጋ፡ speaker.                  | ተፋጋ፡ to speak.                | ነገ፡ to say, tell. |
| ተንቀጥቃለ፡ trembler.              | ተንቀጥወ፡ to tremble.            | ቀጥወ፡ to bruise.   |
| እኩረብ፡ breaker.                 | እኩረብ፡ to break.               | ሩብ፡ to burst.     |
| እስታማሙ፡ nurse for sick persons. | እስታማሙ፡ to nurse sick persons. | ሙ፡ -              |
| እጃዋት፡ cheater.                 | እጃዋት፡ to cheat.               | (non acc.)        |

**ñ:** is prefixed to Verbs, and one of the radical letters doubled: *e.g.*

አጥቢ፡ አቀማመጥ፡ እየራሱ፡

**T:** and **T:** are prefixed to Verbs to form Nouns of action: e.g.

## ተሸጋመኑ፡ ተምስክርና፡

Sometimes the **K:** or **T:** is cut off, and **I:** retained in these Pre-formatives:

\* This is analogous to the Hebrew **האמנויות** and the Arabic **الفنون** Nouns.

| Noun.           | Verbal Derivation.  | Radix. |
|-----------------|---------------------|--------|
| ԴՐԱՋՔ: thunder. | ՃԵՐՃԵՐ: to thunder. | ՃԵՐ:   |
| ՆԹՈԹՈՒ: a drop. | ԴՅՈՒԹՈՒ: to drop.   | ԴՅՈՒԹ: |

Ո: occasionally interchanges with the Մ: of the Infinitive, the Noun being considered no longer as an Infinitive: e.g.

ՓՄՈՒ: (or ՓՅՈՒ:) chair.      ՄՍՅՈՒ: the sitting, (Eth.)  
       ՀՈՒ: to sit.

ՓՄՃԴ: (for ՄՄԳՄՃԴ: ) or ՓԿՃԴ: "sieve"; from ԿՃ: to blow,  
       to fan, to make wind.

(b) *Reduplication*; repetition of any of the radical letters :

| Derivative.               | Primitive.               |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| ՃՃԻ: very small.          | ՃԻ: small.               |
| ՃՃՎ: very great.          | ՃՎ: great.               |
| ՄԱԼԻՒԹՈՒ: very beautiful. | ՄԱԼԻՒԹ: fine, beautiful. |

In Verbal Nouns, which take it from the Verb, Reduplication is retained :

| Nouns.          | Verbal Derivation. | Radix.           |
|-----------------|--------------------|------------------|
| ԴՄՈՂՈՒ: walker. | ԴՄՈՂՈՒՌ: to walk.  | ԴՄՈՂ: to return. |

Reduplication with transposition :

ԴՀՊՃ: doubt.      ԴՄՀՄԾ: to doubt.      ԾՃՀ: .

(c) *Afformation* of the letters Մ: Դ: Կ: Բ: Պ: and Ր::

α The Afformation of ԱՄ: to Substantives, forms Adjectives and Substantives of Fulness, Intenseness, &c., similar to the Latin *orus*, and English *ous* and *ful*; e.g.

Form in Ա-

| ՄԱԼԻՒԹՈՒ: beautiful (formosus).          | ՕՐԱԿՈՒ: form.   |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| ՄՔԳՈՒ: glutton (man of a large stomach). | ՄՔ: belly.      |
| ԳԸՐԳՈՒ: fertile.                         | ԳԸՐ: fruit.     |
| ՈՒԿՈՒ: thick.                            | ՈՒԿ: thickness. |

β Afformative Մ: forms Substantives :

|                              |             |
|------------------------------|-------------|
| ՀՃՐՄՈՒ: mouse-coloured mule. | ՀՃՐ: mouse. |
| ՓՌՄՈՒ: fornicator.           | ՓՐ: dog.    |

γ The Afformative Դ: ատ, ետ, իտ, ալ, լա, produces feminine forms :

Form in Դ::

| ՕՐԴԻ: birth.       | ՓԼՐ: to bring forth.            |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| ԴՎՄՍՐԴԻ: doctrine. | ԴՄՎՀ: to learn.                 |
| ՆՃԹԻ: (fem.) pure. | ՆՃԹ: (masc.) pure.              |
| ՃԱՐԴԻ: daughter.   | ՃԱՐ: son.                       |
| ԳԸՐԴԻ: fear.       | ԳԸՐ: (Eth. ԳԸՐՈՒ) to be afraid. |
| ՓՀԵԴԻ: remainder.  | ՓՀԵ: to remain, to be left.     |
| ՀՓԴԻ: lowness.     | ՀՓ: low.                        |

δ The Afformative **ā**: **ā-**: forms Substantives of Quality, from Verbs which in Latin frequently answer those ending in *tas*, in English in *ty*:

Forms in *ān*.

**መልጻ**: authority.

**ብርሃን**: light, clarity.

**ነዋን**: covenant.

**ቅልጥን**: delicacy, vanity.

**ቀርባን**: offering, eucharist.

Exceptions are, **ንጂድን**: "ant"; and **ንምኅን**: "cough."

Verbs.

**ውለዥ**: & **ውለዥን**: to have authority.

**በረ**: Eth. **በርሃ**: to be light or clear.

**ነዋድ**: **ተነዋድ**::

**ቅልዥ**: to melt.

**ቀ-ረብ**: to take the sacrament.

ε **F**: and **ነት**: are affixed to Adjectives, Substantives, and Particles, in order to form Abstract Substantives; generally answering our *ence*, *ance*, *ness*, *cy*, *ty*, *hood*, and *ship*.

Forms in **F**: and **ነት**::

**ፈብት**: intelligence, sagacity.

**ፈሰብት**: highness.

**ፈሪት**: difference, variety.

**ፈቃነት**: childhood, sonship.

**ፈባንነት**: infancy.

**መልካምነት**: beauty, goodness.

**መምህርነት**: teachership.

**ፈድስት**: holiness.

**እውነትነት**: veracity.

**እስማጥነት**: witchcraft.

Radices.

**ፈብ**: heart, mind.

**ፈሰብ**: (Eth.) high.

**ፈሪ**: different, various.

**ፈቃ**: child, son.

**ፈባን**: infant.

**መልካም**: beautiful, good.

**መምህር**: teacher.

**ፈድስ**: holy.

**እውነት**: true.

**እስማጥ**: sorcerer.

ζ The Afformative **F**: is affixed to Nouns, to form Adjectives and Substantives of Office, Habit, or Quality.

Forms in **F**:

**ሁነትF**: lazy, an idler.

**መርከበF**: sailor.

Radices.

**ሁነት**: idleness.

**መርከብ**: ship.

They often assume a **T**: before the **F**:

**ስራተF**: labourer.

**ኋምጣተF**: refractory.

**ስራ**: work, labour.

**ኋምጣ**: I will not.

η The Ethiopic Afformative **āΦ**: is affixed to Nouns Substantive with the same effect as those formed by the Afformative **F**:: They, besides, form Gentile Nouns.

Form in **āΦ**::

**ወንደለΦ**: evangelist.

Radix.

**ወንደለ**: gospel.

θ The letter **g**: is affixed,

ꝝ To *Infinitives*, to form Nouns of Agency, Instrumentality, Locality, Object, &c.; whereby it must be observed, that when the letter to which it is

AUGMENTED FORMS.

|                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>By Afformatives.</i><br>to Substantives and Adjectives, denoting fulness.         |
| ጥዃ፡ beautiful.                                                                          |
| ጥዃ፡ fruitful.                                                                           |
| ፡ gluttonous.<br>~~~~~                                                                  |
| ፡ to Simple Roots, forming Substantives.                                                |
| ፡ a certain fever.                                                                      |
| ፡ stallion.                                                                             |
| ዋ፡ fornicator.                                                                          |
| ሙ፡ ash-coloured ( <i>lit.</i> mouse-coloured) mule.<br>~~~~~                            |
| አተ, ዘተ, ከተ, ቦተ, ተ፡ and ተ፡ Feminine Forms.                                               |
| birth, nativity.                                                                        |
| ፡ (ቍልወጥ፡) power.                                                                        |
| አስተ፡ boasting, glorying.                                                                |
| ፡ (ልቻ፡) daughter.                                                                       |
| ጥ፡ majesty.                                                                             |
| ጥ፡ fear.                                                                                |
| ጥ፡ fornication.                                                                         |
| ፡ the rest, remainder.                                                                  |
| ፡ lowness.                                                                              |
| ጥ፡ gift.<br>~~~~~                                                                       |
| to Simple Roots, forms Substantives of Essence (Concrete substantives), Power, Quality. |
| ጥና፡ authority, privilege.                                                               |
| ጥ፡ light, clarity.                                                                      |
| ፡ covenant, treaty.                                                                     |
| infant.                                                                                 |
| ጥ፡ delicacy.                                                                            |
| ጥ፡ offering, eucharist.                                                                 |
| ጥ፡ ant.                                                                                 |
| ጥ፡ coughing, a cold.                                                                    |

|                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (e) ተ፡ and እጥ፡ to Substantives, Adjectives, and Particles, form Abstract Substantives of Quality, State, &c. |
| አጠቃ፡ intelligence, prudence.                                                                                 |
| አሰራቃ፡ highness, elevation.                                                                                   |
| ዘምሩቃ፡ relationship.                                                                                          |
| አሪት፡ difference, variety.                                                                                    |
| ልሸነት፡ sonship.                                                                                               |
| መልካምነት፡ goodness, beauty.                                                                                    |
| እውነትነት፡ verity.                                                                                              |
| እምላትዋነት፡ divine nature.<br>~~~~~                                                                             |
| f. ተ፡ to Nouns and Particles, forms Adjectives and Substantives of Office, Habit, and Quality.               |
| ሁነታቃ፡ idler.                                                                                                 |
| መርከበቃ፡ navigator, sailor.<br>Often assumes ተ፡፡                                                               |
| እዝንታቃ፡ mournful.                                                                                             |
| ስራታቃ፡ workman, labourer.                                                                                     |
| እምበታቃ፡ unwilling.<br>~~~~~                                                                                   |
| (g) አዎ, with the same effect as the preceding.                                                               |
| ወንደለዋ፡ evangelist.                                                                                           |
| ፈርማዊ፡ Pharisee.                                                                                              |
| ፍረንማዊ፡ French.<br>~~~~~                                                                                      |
| (h) የ፡ expressed or implied, forms Nouns of Instrumentality, Agency, Locality, Object, Individuality.        |
| α To Infinitives.                                                                                            |
| ሙወርያ፡ a tie.                                                                                                 |
| መለከያ፡ measuring instrument.                                                                                  |
| መለገያ፡ object of scorn.<br>~~~~~                                                                              |
| β To Simple Roots.                                                                                           |
| ቅምጣ፡ spoil, booty.                                                                                           |
| ቅምጥ፡ bit, morsel, taste.                                                                                     |
| ክርጊያ፡ rubbish, sweepings.                                                                                    |



to be joined, is one of those changeable Linguals or Dentals mentioned in Part I. Ch. VII. 4 c., both **פ**: and the letter to which it was to be joined, are dropped, and exchanged for such a cognate Lingual or Dental as combines the joint sounds. (See the above-mentioned paragraph.)

Forms with **פ**:, the **פ** being either expressed  
or implied.

**סְמַלְתָּפָ**: measure.

**סְמַלְתָּפָ**: object, means of scorn.

**סְמַלְתָּפָ**: passage, excellent.

**סְמַלְתָּפָ**: printing-office.

**סְמַלְתָּפָ**: place, or means of  
returning.

**סְמַלְתָּפָ**: a tie, band, bond.

#### Infinitives.

**סְמַלְתָּפָ**: the measuring.

**סְמַלְתָּפָ**: the scorning.

**סְמַלְתָּפָ**: the passing.

**סְמַלְתָּפָ**: the printing.

**סְמַלְתָּפָ**: the returning.

**סְמַלְתָּפָ**: the binding.

2 To Simple Roots, with the same object and in the same manner as to Infinitives:

Forms with **פ**::

**פְּגֻמָּפָ**: booty.

**פְּגֻמָּפָ**: a bit, taste.

**פְּגֻמָּפָ**: trail, train.

**פְּגֻמָּפָ**: rubbish.

Roots.

**פְּגֻמָּפָ**: to plunder.

**פְּגֻמָּפָ**: the tasting.

**פְּגֻמָּפָ**: the dragging.

**פְּגֻמָּפָ**: sweeping..

## SECTION II.

### On the Species of Nouns.

1. Nouns are to be considered, either as *Substantives*, names of things, or as *Adjectives*, names of properties. In the Amharic, as in the other Semitic Languages, they both belong together; and they have been jointly treated in the preceding Section as to their Formation. It remains now to say a few words concerning the Adjectives.

2. As to their Formation, but few of them, as the preceding Tables show, are *original* : such are,

**נִילָה**: good.

**בְּנֵי**: well.

**חֲמֹרָה**: bad.

**קְרַבָּה**: oblong.

**בְּנֵי**: prominent.

**חֲמֹרָה**: old.

Even these are but primarily Adjectives; and when isolated, may be, and are, used as Substantives. Most Adjectives are of derivative forms, being derived either from Verbs (see Table II.) or from Substantives; e.g.

**גְּדֹשָׁה**: **חַמְפָה**: **סְמַלְתָּפָ**: **סְמַלְתָּפָ**: **סְמַלְתָּפָ**:

Participial Adjectives, **פְּסַמְּדִיכָּה**: **פְּטַסְּדִיכָּה**:

3. As for Comparison, the Amharic Language, like the Hebrew, has no

Adjective form to express the Comparative or Superlative: we therefore must defer this subject to the Syntax.

4. The Numeral Nouns will be treated in a separate chapter.

We now proceed to the consideration of the *Gender* of the Nouns.

### SECTION III.

#### *On the Gender of the Nouns.*

1. The Amharic Nouns have but two *Genders*, Masculine and Feminine. We shall endeavour to point out a few general rules, showing what Nouns belong to either of the two genders, and by which forms they are to be recognised. We have to complain, however, that there is yet much confusion; both masculine and feminine forms being alternately applied to words where the sex is not palpably distinguished.

A. Masculine are:

(a) The names of God, angels, and men; also the names of nations, and of all male animals:

|              |                 |                     |
|--------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| አባክስ፡ God,   | ስድጋን፡ Satan.    | ማረብ፡ an Arab.       |
| the Lord.    | ገብርኤል፡ Gabriel. | ሀበሻ፡ an Abyssinian. |
| አምላካ፡ God.   | ሰው፡ man.        | ፍራንሳብ፡ a Frenchman. |
| የየተ፡ Jesus.  | የሐንስ፡ John.     | እንበሳ፡ a lion.       |
| መልካም፡ angel. |                 |                     |

(b) The names of the sun and the stars, of ranks and offices of men:

|           |                |                |
|-----------|----------------|----------------|
| ሰኩለ፡ sun. | ክተማ፡ governor. | ጠቅላ፡ guardian. |
| ኩክ፡ star. | ገዢ፡ ruler.     | ጠላ፡ servant.   |

B. Feminine are:

The names of women and female animals; the names of the moon, the earth, countries, towns, &c.; plants; the names of female ranks and offices; collective names; and the names of several abstracts:

|                     |                  |                         |
|---------------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| ማሪያም፡ Mary.         | ከተማ፡ city, camp. | ወጪ፡ princess, lady.     |
| ዶ፡ hen.             | መንግሥት፡ village.  | እመቤት፡ mistress.         |
| ሙሉ፡ moon.           | ገንደር፡ Gondar.    | ገዢ፡ female servant.     |
| ጥም፡ earth, country. | ዘሩ፡ tree.        | ተባሪ፡ assembly, society. |
| አበባ፡ Abyssinia.     | እበባ፡ a flower.   |                         |

And see 2.

C. Common, are several conditions of life; as, "child," "slave," and others, where the termination of the word does not distinguish the sex.

2. The two Genders are distinguished,

(a) By the addition of distinct words denoting the Male and the Female. These are: ወንድ: and ተባት: for Males, and በት: and አንበት: for Females: besides this, አዎራ: for several male animals, who are without this distinction considered as females; as, goats, fowl, &c.: e.g.

ወንድ: ለዚ: a son, boy.      በት: ለዚ: a daughter, girl.

የንበት: ተባት: male of animals.      የንበት: አንበት: female of animals.

አዎራ: ፍጥል: he-goat.      አዎራ: ዝር: cock (he-fowl).

In Shoa, they carry this distinction further; calling "clayish earth" ወንድ: or ተባት: ወንድር: (male earth), and "loose earth" አንበት: or በት: ወንድር: (female earth). They call wood which splits perpendicularly, ወንድ: እንዲቻት: "male wood"; and wood which splits transversely, በት: እንዲቻት: "female wood." Maria-Theresa dollars, which have the requisite coinage, አንበት: ቴር: "female dollars"; and those which are any way deficient, being M. T. dollars, ተባት: ቴር: "male dollars." The latter distinction obtains in all Abyssinia.

(b) The Female is distinguished by the termination ት: ት: and ቴ:: (See the Table of Derivatives, II. 4. c.)

(c) The same by ቤ: and ንት: (See Derivatives, II. 4. c.)

(d) The Primitives are mostly *Masculines*.

(e) As to the Derivative forms, the following rule obtains:

Classes I. 1. 2. 3. 6. and II. 4. f. g. are predominantly Masculine; and Classes I. 4. and II. 4. c. d. e. predominantly Feminine. The rest are of Mixed Gender.

3. The remaining Nouns are undetermined as to the sex; the Adjective and Verb being promiscuously applied to them in the Masculine and in the Feminine Gender.

4. Several Adjectives and Substantives, whose form is Masculine, are changed into a Feminine form:

| Masculine.         | Feminine.             |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| ንግ:                | ንግዴት: pure.           |
| ብሩ:                | ብሩዴት: clear.          |
| ገዢም:               | ገዢምት: wonderful.      |
| ጠዋ:                | ጠዋቱ: guardian.        |
| ለሩ:                | ለሩት: old.             |
| ወራሽ: heir.         | ወራሽተ: heiress.        |
| ሁነተኛ:              | ሁነተኛቸው: lazy.         |
| ከረማዊ: heathen man. | ከረማዊተ: heathen woman. |

## SECTION IV.

*On the Number of the Nouns.*

1. The *number* is but twofold; viz. *Singular* and *Plural*. We might add the *Collective*; but that being considered either as a body, when it is *Singular*, or as an aggregate of individuals, when it is *plural*, it constitutes no particular form; and we therefore proceed to consider these two, the *Singular* and the *Plural*; there being no *Dual* in this language.

2. As the *Singular* is that form in which each Noun, before it is changed, presents itself, we need not say any thing about it, but direct our attention at once to the formation of the *Plural Number*.

3. The truly Amharic *Plural* is very simple; it has but one form, and that is the termination *otsh* (*Tigrê ot*); in which we recognise the Hebrew **תְּ**, the Arabic **أَتْ**, and the Ethiopic **āt**; e.g.

| Singular.              | Plural.                  |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>በት</b> : house.     | <b>በተኑ</b> : houses.     |
| <b>ወሳን</b> : dog.      | <b>ወሳኑ</b> : dogs.       |
| <b>ልጊዧ</b> : child.    | <b>ልጊዧዎች</b> : children. |
| <b>አባት</b> : father.   | <b>አባቶች</b> : fathers.   |
| <b>ጠዋቅ</b> : guardian. | <b>ጠዋቆች</b> : guardians. |
| <b>በት</b> : good.      | <b>በተኑ</b> : good.       |

NOTE.—The *Plural* termination of several Nouns ending in the fifth order is divided into two Consonants; the original letter being put into the sixth order, and a **ሁ**: being added, to which the *Plural* **ኑ**: is affixed; e.g.

**ጥምጥልሮች**: similitudes, from **ጥምጥል**::

4. But besides this Amharic, we have the following Ethiopic *Plural* forms; which sometimes are applied, although the true Amh. *Plural* always may be put.

(a) Termination *ān*.

For the Derivates, I. 1. II. 4. g. and some other forms; e.g.

| Singular.            | Plural.                | Singular.               | Plural.        |
|----------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| <b>ቅድስት</b> : holy.  | <b>ቅድስተኑ</b> : saints. | <b>ፈርማዊ</b> : Pharisee. | <b>ፈርማዎች</b> : |
| <b>መበገ</b> : wise.   | <b>መበገኑ</b> :          | <b>ጋጥሬ</b> : sinner.    | <b>ጋጥሬኑ</b> :  |
| <b>ከያዥ</b> : living. | <b>ከያዥኑ</b> :          | <b>ነድረ</b> : poor.      | <b>ነድየኑ</b> :  |
| <b>ሙት</b> : dead.    | <b>ሙትኑ</b> :           | <b>ሙያዣ</b> : teacher.   | <b>ሙያዣኑ</b> :  |

NOTE.—Irregular: **አይሁዳዊ**: “Jew.” **አይሁዳዎች**: “Jews.”

(b) Termination *āt*.

The Feminines of the Plural Adjectives in *ān*.

**ቅድስተት**: **ጋጥሬት**: **ሙያዣት**: **ከያዥት**::

The Derivative forms terminating in *ān*.

**መልጠን**: authority. **መልጠች**:: **ብርሃን**: light. **ብርሃቶች**: lights.  
**ሐሙን**: infant. **ሐሙቶች**: infants.

Besides these :

Singular.

**ሰጠቅ**: heaven.

**ድመፍ**: cloud.

**ፈጽል**: letter.

**ቍል**: word.

**ጥወሚል**: secret.

Plural.

**ሰጠቅቶች**: heavens.

**ድመፍቶች**: clouds.

**ፈጽሎች**: letters.

**ቍሎች**: words.

**ጥወሚልዎች**: secrets.

Some forms ending in the fifth order :

**ጥወገል**: likeness.

**ጥወገዶች**: likenesses.

**ዝዕ**: time.

**ዝዕያቶች**: times.

Words ending in the servile ች::

**አመት**: year.

**አመታች**: years.

**ሰጠዕት**: martyr.

**ሰጠዕታች**: martyrs.

Other forms :

**ስዋሪያ**: apostle.

**ስዋሪያዎች**: apostles.

**ንዲሳ**: wind.

**ንዲሳዎች**: winds.

**ሰግ**: law.

**ሰግዎች**: laws.

**በት**: house.

**በቶች**: houses.\*

**ካሁድ**: priest.

**ካሁዶች**: priests.

**አቶ**: metropolitan.

**አቶዎች**: metropolitans.

**እክስቀል**: bishop.

**እክስቀለዎች**: bishops.

**ደያዊ**: deacon.

**ደያዎች**: deacons.

(c) Form **አግባብ**::

**አገብ**: village.

**አገቦች**: villages.

(d) From **አዋጅ**::

**ወታጅ**: string.

**አውታጅ**: strings.

**አዝብ**: people.

**አስዝብ**: people.

**ሙራ**: bird.

**አዸሙራ**: birds.

**በምድ**: pillar.

**አስምድ**: pillars.

(e) **ገብረ**::

Singular.

**አጭ**: wild.

Plural.

**አጭዎች**: wild beasts.

**ወርቃ**: beam.

**ወርቃዎች**: army.

\* Used only in **አጭያት**: **ክርስቲያኖች**: "Churches," from **በት**: **ክርስቲያን**: "a Church."

## (f) አጋብረት::

Φብ: priest.

መንፈብ: spirit.

እንበሳ: lion.

መከተና: judge.

ነጽል: lip.

የትብብ: star.

እምላክ: God.

ንግድ: leopard.

መልካክ: angel.

መስቀለት: window.

ለቅ: chief.

ጥቅም: mule.

ጋዢ: demon.

Rare forms:

ኅገሥ: king.

ቆዕስተዋዕ: monk.

Φብዕስተ: priests.

መንፈብዕስተ: spirits.

እናብረት: lions.

መከተናዕስተ: judges.

ነጽልዕ: lips.

የትብብዕስተ: stars.

እምላክዕስተ: gods.

እናምድርዕ: leopards.

መልካክዕስተ: angels.

መስቀለትዕ: windows.

ለቅዕስተ: chiefs.

ጥቅምዕ: and እንቅድተዕ: mules.

እናገኘዕስተ: demons.

ኅገሥ: and ከገሥታች: kings.

ቆዕስተዋዕ: ቃዕስተዋዕ: &amp; ቃዕስተዋዕ: monks.

5. It is well to attend to these various forms, as they frequently occur in the Amharic Bible as well as in conversation: but it must be borne in mind, that they are all of Ethiopic origin, and superseded by the simple Amharic form *otsh*; and a beginner will never be mistaken in using the latter, until he is sufficiently acquainted with the language to know where he has to apply any of the other forms.

## SECTION V.

*On the Declension of the Nouns.*

The Declension of Nouns is very simple and uniform. Nouns are inflected through four Cases, equally in the Singular and the Plural, i.e. the Nominative, the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative. One example may suffice to show the whole mode of proceeding:

| Singular.                        | Plural.          |
|----------------------------------|------------------|
| Nom. ቤት: a house.                | ቤቶች: houses.     |
| Gen. የቤት: of a house, a house's. | የቤቶች: of houses. |
| Dat. ለቤት: to a house.            | ለቤቶች: to houses. |
| Acc. ቤተን: a house.               | ቤቶችን: houses.    |

## OBSERVATIONS:

(a). The Genitive answers the Eth. **H:**, and is not to be confounded with the Pronouns Relative or Distributive.

The Accusative Case must not be confounded with the Interrogative Adverb **ች**:, nor with the termination **ች**: of Nouns. On the Construction, and on the various uses of the Accusative, see Syntax.

2. It occasionally happens, that they make use of the Ethiopic Genitive or *status constructus*, i.e. that mode of construction which prevails in the Hebrew, and which has been noticed in the First Section of this Chapter, § 4. The two nouns, which stand in a genitive relation to each other, one of which is the *regens* (Nominative), and the other the *rectum* (Genitive), are so closely connected as to appear as one word. The Genitive follows the Nominative, and receives the tone or accent; in doing which, the preceding Noun, the Nominative, is modified: in the Hebrew it is shortened: in our case, the last letter, if it is of the sixth order, is changed into the first, and the two words are considered as one compound, separated merely by the (:) colon; but even this, in the Amharic, is often dropped, especially when the Genitive begins with a vowel consonant, or when it is a short word:

**ባል፡ በታ፡** and **ባለበታ፡** “master of the house.”

**ባለድ፡** for **ባል፡ ቤድ፡** “owner of debts,” i.e. “creditor” or “debtor.”

Another change is produced by the affixion of Pronouns to Nouns, of which we shall speak under the head of Inseparable Pronouns.

## CHAP. II.

### ON THE NUMERALS.

1. The Numerals are of two kinds, *Cardinals* and *Ordinals*. The Cardinals specify the number of things which are the subject of speech: the Ordinals exhibit the order in which they occur.

2. The *Cardinal Numbers* in the Amharic are as follow:

| Cipher.  | Amharic.               | English.    | Cipher.   | Amharic.                | English.      |
|----------|------------------------|-------------|-----------|-------------------------|---------------|
| <b>፩</b> | 1. { ከንድ፡ { f. ከንድቻ፡ } | One, a, an. | <b>፩፪</b> | 30. ወላሳ፡                | Thirty.       |
| <b>፪</b> | 2. በለት፡                | Two.        | <b>፪፫</b> | 40. { እርባ፡ or { እርባዣ፡ } | Forty.        |
| <b>፫</b> | 3. በስት፡                | Three.      | <b>፫፫</b> | 50. እምባ፡                | Fifty.        |
| <b>፬</b> | 4. እጂት፡                | Four.       | <b>፫፭</b> | 60. በይት፡ or በተ፡         | Sixty.        |
| <b>፭</b> | 5. እምባት፡               | Five.       | <b>፫፮</b> | 70. በጣ፡ or በጣዊ፡         | Seventy.      |
| <b>፮</b> | 6. በይንት፡               | Six.        | <b>፫፯</b> | 80. በማንያም፡              | Eighty.       |
| <b>፯</b> | 7. በባት፡                | Seven.      | <b>፫፱</b> | 90. ዘመኑ፡                | Ninety.       |
| <b>፱</b> | 8. በሞንታ፡               | Eight.      | <b>፫፲</b> | 100. መቶ፡                | Hundred.      |
| <b>፲</b> | 9. አጠቃ፡                | Nine.       | <b>፫፳</b> | 1000. ገብ፡               | Thousand.     |
| <b>፳</b> | 10. እውጭ፡               | Ten.        | <b>፫፴</b> | 10000. እልፅ፡             | Ten Thousand. |
| <b>፴</b> | 20. ቤቶ፡                | Twenty.     |           |                         |               |

*Compound Cardinals.*

|                           |           |                           |            |
|---------------------------|-----------|---------------------------|------------|
| <b>፪፭:</b> 11. አመራ፡ አንድ፡  | Eleven.   | <b>፪፯፡ 16.</b> አመራ፡ በደብት፡ | Sixteen.   |
| <b>፪፮፡ 12.</b> አመራ፡ ሁለት፡  | Twelve.   | <b>፪፱፡ 17.</b> አመራ፡ ሰባት፡  | Seventeen. |
| <b>፪፯፡ 13.</b> አምራ፡ ሻስት፡  | Thirteen. | <b>፪፲፡ 18.</b> አመራ፡ ሻምኑት፡ | Eighteen.  |
| <b>፪፱፡ 14.</b> አመራ፡ አራት፡  | Fourteen. | <b>፪፳፡ 19.</b> አመራ፡ ዘጋጀ፡  | Nineteen.  |
| <b>፪፴፡ 15.</b> አመራ፡ አምስት፡ | Fifteen.  |                           |            |

The same order is observed with all the Tenth, to a Hundred; e.g.

**ሀያ፡ አንድ፡ ሥላጥ፡ ሁለት፡ አርባ፡ ሻስት፡ &c.**

The numbers upward of a Hundred are joined to the Hundreds by **ከ፡** or **ተ፡;** e.g.

**፩፭፡ 106. መቶ፡ ከስድስት፡ . . . .** One hundred and six.

**፩፬፡ 160. መቶ፡ ተስት፡** or **መቶ፡ ከስት፡** One hundred and sixty.

**፩፭፭፡ 199. መቶ፡ ከዘዴዴ፡ ዘጋጀ፡ . . .** One hundred & ninety-nine.

**፩፭፯፡ 200. ሁለት፡ መቶ፡ . . . . .** Two hundred.

**፩፭፯፭፡ 1841. ስሁ፡ ተስምኑት፡ መቶ፡ ከርባ፡ አንድ፡** or **አመራ፡ ሻምኑት፡ መቶ፡ ከርባ፡ አንድ፡** One Thousand Eight Hundred and Forty-one.

3. The *Ordinal* Numbers are formed by the termination **ቻ፡** affixed to the *Cardinals.*

**አንድቻ፡ መሸመርያ፡** } the First.  
or **ፈተቻ፡** }

**ሰይስተቻ፡** the Sixth.

**ሰባተቻ፡** the Seventh.

**ሰምኑተቻ፡** the Eighth.

**ዘጋጀተቻ፡** and **ዘጋጀቻ፡** the Ninth.

**አመራቻ፡** the Tenth.

**አመራ፡ ሁለትቻ፡** the Eleventh.

&c. &c.

The Simple Numbers, Twenty, Thirty, and upwards, scarcely admit of the termination **ቻ፡**, but are generally given to the Cardinal form. In compounds, the last number receives the termination **ቻ፡**; as,

**ሀያ፡ አንድቻ፡ ዓመታል፡** the Twenty-first chapter.

4. They have no particular form for the Distributive Numbers; but they express them, either by reiteration, as,

**አንድ፡ አንድ፡** (contr. **አንድንድ፡**) one-by-one, some, several, one or other; singly, severally.

**ሁለት፡ ሁለት፡** two-and-two;

Or by እር: or እር፡ as,

እ.ያንደንድ፡ each, every. እ.የሁለት፡ by twos, by pairs, two-and-two, every two, every couple, &c. &c.

የጥስስ፡ ቅ፡ every three days.



### CHAP. III.

#### ON THE PRONOUNS.

1. The Amharic *Pronouns* are, as to their *logical* character, divided, as in other languages, into, 1. Personal; 2. Possessive; 3. Demonstrative; 4. Relative; 5. Interrogative; 6. Reflective; and 7. Distributive Pronouns. As to their *forms*, they are classed, as in other Semitic Languages, into Separable and Inseparable Pronouns. We begin with the *Separable Pronouns*. They are Personal, Possessive, Demonstrative, Interrogative, and Reflective.

#### SECTION I.

##### *Separable Personal Pronouns.*

They are Three for the Singular, and Three for the Plural. The Singular has some peculiarities. The First Person has not the Gender expressed: the Second and Third have distinct forms for the Masculine and for the Feminine Gender: the Second Person has, besides, three distinctions of honour, as the following Paradigm shows:

| SINGULAR.            |        |                            | PLURAL.     |
|----------------------|--------|----------------------------|-------------|
| Masc.                | Com.   | Fem.                       | Com.        |
| 1 Pers.              | እኔ፡ I. |                            | እና፡ we.     |
| 2 Pers. እኔ፡          |        | እኔ፡ } thou.<br>እኔዎ፡ } you. | እሉኔ፡ you.   |
| 3 Pers. እርዑ፡ he, it. |        | እርዑዎ፡ she, it.             | እርዑዎ፡ they. |

NOTE. (a) On the application of the three different forms for the Second Person: እኔ፡ and እኔዎ፡ are applied to inferiors, to God, to intimate friends; and in universal address, where you need not pay any regard to rank, &c. እኔዎ፡ is used for a *lesser*; እርዑዎ፡ for a *higher* degree of honour. These two forms resemble the German *Ihr* (in Switzerland *Er*), and *Sie*, and the Italian *Voi* and *Lei*, for the Second Person Singular.

(b) In speaking of a *distinguished* person, the form of the Third Person Plural is used, as a mark of honour.

## 2. The Declension is the same as with the Nouns.

| 1st Pers.                           |  | SINGULAR.                                          |      | PLURAL.                                              |                                         |
|-------------------------------------|--|----------------------------------------------------|------|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Com.                                |  | Masc.                                              | Fem. | Masc.                                                | Fem.                                    |
| N. <b>አክ: I.</b>                    |  | <b>አንተ:</b> thou.                                  |      | <b>አርጥ::</b> <b>አርጥዎ:</b> you.                       | <b>አርጥ::</b> he, it.                    |
| G. <b>የለ:</b> { of me, my.<br>mine. |  | <b>የለ::</b> <b>የለሁ::</b> { of thee, thy.<br>thine. |      | <b>የለጥ::</b> <b>የለጥዎ::</b> { of you, your.<br>yours. | <b>የለጥ::</b> { of him, it,<br>his, its. |
| D. <b>እለ:</b> to me, me.            |  | <b>እንተ::</b> <b>እንተ:</b> to thee, thee.            |      | <b>እርጥ::</b> <b>እርጥ::</b> to you, you.               | <b>እርጥ::</b> { to him,<br>him, it.      |
| A. <b>እኬን:</b> me.                  |  | <b>እንተ::</b> <b>እንተ::</b> thee.                    |      | <b>እርጥ::</b> <b>እርጥ::</b> you.                       | <b>እርጥ::</b> { her, it.                 |
|                                     |  |                                                    |      |                                                      |                                         |
| 2d Pers.                            |  | 3d Pers.                                           |      | 3 Pers.                                              |                                         |
| Com.                                |  | Masc.                                              |      | <b>የረከጥዎ::</b> they.                                 |                                         |
| Nom. <b>የነት:</b> we.                |  | Gen. <b>የነቶች::</b> of us, our, ours.               |      | <b>የረከጥዎ::</b> of them, their,                       |                                         |
| Dat. <b>አነቱ::</b> to us.            |  | Acc. <b>አነቶች::</b> us.                             |      | <b>አርጥ::</b> to them.                                |                                         |
|                                     |  |                                                    |      |                                                      |                                         |

Thus far the Separable Personal Pronouns. The Inseparable Personal Pronouns are those Verbal Suffixes which will be mentioned in their proper place.

## SECTION II.

*Separable Possessive Pronouns.*

They are formed by the Genitive of the Personal Pronouns ; and are as follows :

| Singular.                        | Plural.              |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| የለ፡ my, mine.                    | የች፡ our, ours.       |
| የንተ፡ m. የንተ፡ f. thy, thine.      | የለች፡ your, yours.    |
| የንቱ፡ የርስዎ፡ your, yours.          |                      |
| የርስ፡ m. his. የርስዎ፡ f. her, hers. | የርሱች፡ their, theirs. |

## SECTION III.

*Demonstrative Pronouns.*

They are two in number ; one for near, and one for remote objects.

1. *Demonstrative for Near Objects.*

ይህ፡ masc. የዚ፡ or ያቸ፡ fem. "This."

Shoa Dialect: እኩ፡ masc. እኩቸ፡ fem.

## DECLENSION.

## COMMON FORM, IRREGULAR.

Masc.

## SINGULAR.

Fem.

Nom. ይህ፡

ይህቸ፡ contr. ያቸ፡ this.

Gen. የዚ፡

የዚቸ፡ ... የዚቸ፡ of this.

Dat. ለዚ፡

ለዚቸ፡ ... ለዚቸ፡ to this.

Acc. ይህን፡ &amp; ይህንን፡

ይህንቸ፡ ... ያቸን፡ this.

## PLURAL.

Common Gender.

Nom. እለዚ፡ or

እነዚ፡ contr. እለዚ፡ these.

Gen. የለዚ፡ ..

የእነዚ፡ .. የለዚ፡ of these.

Dat. ለለዚ፡ ..

ለእነዚ፡ .. ለለዚ፡ to these.

Acc. እለዚቸ፡ ..

እነዚቸ፡ .. እለዚቸ፡ these.

## SHOA FORM, REGULAR.

## SINGULAR.

Fem.

N. እኩ፡ እኩቸ፡ this.

## PLURAL.

Common.

እለዚ፡ or እነዚ፡

G. የዚ፡ የዚቸ፡ of this.

contr. እለዚ፡ &amp;c. the same as above,

D. ለዚ፡ ለዚቸ፡ to this.

but the እ፡ prevailing throughout.

A እኩን፡ እኩቸን፡ this.

## ANOTHER REGULAR FORM, OCCASIONALLY USED IN SHOA.

|                                             | SINGULAR.                      | PLURAL.                          |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Masc.                                       | Fem.                           | Com.                             |
| N. <b>ያ</b> :                               | <b>ያ</b> : contr. <b>ያ</b> ::  | <b>እለሁ</b> : contr. <b>የለሁ</b> : |
| G. <b>የያ</b> :                              | <b>የያ</b> : . . . <b>የያ</b> :: | <b>የለሁ</b> : . . . <b>የለሁ</b> :  |
| D. <b>ለያ</b> :                              | <b>ለያ</b> : . . . <b>ለያ</b> :: | <b>ለለሁ</b> : . . . <b>ለለሁ</b> :  |
| A. <b>ያ</b> : } <b>ያ</b> : . . . <b>ያ</b> : | <b>የያ</b> : . . . <b>የያ</b> :  | <b>እለሁ</b> : . . . <b>እለሁ</b> :  |

## 2. For Remote Objects.

|                | SINGULAR.            | PLURAL.                                                   |
|----------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Masc.          | Fem.                 | Common.                                                   |
| N. <b>ያ</b> :  | <b>ያ</b> : that.     | <b>እለያ</b> : & <b>እንይያ</b> : contr. <b>እልያ</b> : those.   |
| G. <b>የያ</b> : | <b>የያ</b> : of that. | <b>የለያ</b> : & <b>የንይያ</b> : . . . <b>የልያ</b> : of those. |
| D. <b>ለያ</b> : | <b>ለያ</b> : to that. | <b>ለለያ</b> : & <b>ለንይያ</b> : . . . <b>ለልያ</b> : to those. |
| A. <b>ያ</b> :  | <b>ያ</b> : that.     | <b>እለያ</b> : & <b>እንይያ</b> : . . . <b>እልያ</b> : those.    |

## FORM OCCASIONALLY OCCURRING IN SHOA.

|                | SINGULAR.            | PLURAL.                          |
|----------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| Masc.          | Fem.                 |                                  |
| N. <b>እ</b> :  | <b>እ</b> : that.     | Like the above, only contracting |
| G. <b>የእ</b> : | <b>የእ</b> : of that. | <b>እ</b> : to <b>እ</b> :         |
| D. <b>ለእ</b> : | <b>ለእ</b> : to that. |                                  |
| A. <b>እ</b> :  | <b>እ</b> : that.     |                                  |

NOTE.—The Demonstrative Pronouns form Adverbs; which see, under the head of Adverbs.

## SECTION IV.

## Interrogative Pronouns.

There are four: One Personal, **ማ**: pl. **እለማ**: "who?" "which?" "what sort of?" One Impersonal, **ም**: "which?" "what?" One Common, **የ**: "what?" "which?" One Universal, **ም**: "what?"

The Personal is **ማ**: "who?" "which?" e.g.

**ማ**: **እደገኘ**: **ያ**: Who did this?

**ያ**: **ማ**: **ነው**: (or **ማነው**): Who is this?

**ነውለች**: **ማ**: Which of both?

The Impersonal is **ም**: "which?" "what?" e.g.

**ም**: **እደገኘ**: What hast thou done?

**ም**: **በት**: Which house?

The Universal Interrogative Pronoun is զո՞րք: "what?" e.g.

**፩፻፡ የዚህንምር፡ ካወ፡ What is this?**

**गुरुः** and **गुर्तुः** are declinable, thus :

| SINGULAR.                                        | PLURAL.                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Pers.                                            |                                                                      |
| Nom. <b>սպէ:</b> who? which?                     | Impers.                                                              |
| Gen. <b>բսպէ:</b> of whom? whose? of which?      | <b>զո՞ւ:</b> what? which?<br><b>բդո՞ւ:</b> of what? of which? whose? |
| Dat. <b>Ասպէ:</b> to (for) whom? to (for) which? | <b>Ադո՞ւ:</b> to (for) what? to (for) which? wherefore?              |
| Acc. <b>սպէն:</b> whom? which?                   | <b>Գո՞ւն:</b> what? which?                                           |
| PLURAL.                                          |                                                                      |
| Nom. <b>ՀԱՍՊէ:</b> who? which?                   | <b>ՀԱԴՈ՞Ւ:</b> which?                                                |
| Gen. <b>ԲՀՍՊԷ:</b> whose? of which?              | <b>ԲԴՈ՞Ւ:</b> of which? whose?                                       |
| Dat. <b>ԱՀՍՊԷ:</b> to whom? to which?            | <b>ԱԴՈ՞Ւ:</b> to which?                                              |
| Acc. <b>ՀԱՍՊէն:</b> whom? which?                 | <b>ՀԱԴՈ՞Ւն:</b> which?                                               |

**go<sup>o</sup>zg<sup>o</sup>l:** has no Plural; and is defective in the Singular, having no Accusative Case.

Besides the preceding, they have the Interrogative Pronoun **የቁ**: or Euphonic **የቁ**: "what?" "who?" "which?" It is indeclinable, and used chiefly in forming Adverbs, by joining with Prepositions; as, **በቁ**, **በቁ**: &c.

## SECTION V.

### *Reflective Pronouns.*

They are three, **ገለበች፡፡** **ሸ፡፡** and **ነፃ፡፡** with the signification of *self*. They assume the Suffixes of the Possessive Pronoun, as in the English *myself*, *thyself*, &c. So is in all Abyssinia **ሸ፡፡** with Suffixes **ሸ፡፡** **ሸሁ፡፡** **ሸሁሁ፡፡** **ሸሁወ፡፡** **ሸሁሩ፡፡** **ሸሁቻ፡፡** **ሸሁቻሁ፡፡** “*myself*,” “*thyself*,” &c. **ገለበች፡፡** with Suffixes, is not used in Shoa; but in N.W. Abyssinia, it is common. **ነፃ፡፡** with Suffixes is used in all Abyssinia, though not so often as **ሸ፡፡** But the reflective mode of speaking is more frequently used in Verbs, without these Pronouns, as will be shown afterwards.

## SECTION VI.

### *Distributive Separable Pronoun.*

This is **እ.ያንደንደ**: "each," "every," with Suffixes. As it is composed of a double **እንደ**: and the distributive **እ.ያ**:, it has been numbered already among the Distributive Numerals.

## SECTION VII.

*Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are the following:

**ՍՊՐԴՈՒ**: any, each, every one, whoever, whosoever.

**ՍՊՐԴՈՒ**: m. **ՍՊՐԴՐՈՒ**: fem. whosoever.

**ԱԾ**: all, each, every, any.

**ԱՆ**: other.

**ՃՅՋՔ**: some, something.

1. **ՍՊՐԴՈՒ**: **ՍՊՐԴՈՒ**: and **ՍՊՐԴՐՈՒ**: are used only in the Singular, nor receive they any Suffix. When used with the Verb in the negative, they adopt the reverse to their natural signification, "none," "none whatever."

2. **ԱԾ**: is rather the Substantive **ԱԾ**: "totality," with Suffixes. It assumes all Suffixes, and is declinable; but has no Plural.

3. **ԱՆ**: is used in both the Plural and the Singular Numbers, and is declinable.

4. **ՃՅՋՔ**: is declinable, and used only in the Singular.

5. **ՃՅԱ**: "some," "several," is declinable, and has but one number. Besides this, the words, "some" and "such," are circumscribed by Verbs; e.g. "Some men like it," **ԲՏՎՈՔԴ**: **ՃԾ**: lit. "There are men who like it." "Such:" **ՃՅՋԱ**: **ՔԾ**: or pl. **ՃՅՋԱ**: **ՔԾ**:: "who is," or "who are so."

## SECTION VIII.

*Inseparable Pronouns.*

They are, with regard to their character, Personal, Possessive, Relative, and Distributive; and with regard to their position, they are either Prefixes or Suffixes.

1. *Personal Suffixes to Verbs.\**

They consist partly in modifications of the Personal Pronoun; and are annexed to any part of the Verb except the Infinitive; for that Mood, being considered in this respect as a Noun, assumes Nominal Suffixes.

\* We do not speak of those personal designations the Verbs receive at their beginning or end; because they are so intimately connected with the Verb, that we cannot consider them separately.

The following Table contains them all :

|                | SINGULAR.               |          |           | PLURAL.                       |                   |
|----------------|-------------------------|----------|-----------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
|                | Masc.                   | Fem.     | Com.      | Com.                          | PLURAL.           |
| 3.             | ăΦ: ăT: him.            | ăT: her. |           | ăTΦ: them.                    |                   |
| 2.             | U: thee.                | U: thee. |           |                               |                   |
| .. honorif. 1. | .                       | .        | ăTU: you. |                               |                   |
| .. . . . . 2.  | .                       | .        | ăΦ: you.  |                               |                   |
| 1.             | .                       | .        | ă: me.    |                               |                   |
|                |                         |          |           | ă: perfect.                   | ă: pres. &c., us. |
|                | SINGULAR.               |          |           | PLURAL.                       |                   |
| Suff. 1.       | τoΦă: he protected      | me.      |           | 1. τoΦi: he protected         | us.               |
| .. 2.          | τoΦU: he protected      |          |           | τoΦă: (imp.) protect us!      |                   |
| .. ..          | τoΦă: } thee.           |          |           | 2. τoΦăTU: he protected you.  |                   |
| .. . hon.      | τoΦăTU: } he protect-   |          |           |                               |                   |
|                | τoΦΦ: } ed you.         |          |           |                               |                   |
| .. 3.          | τoΦΦ: { he protected    |          |           | 3. τoΦăTΦ: he protected them. |                   |
|                | him.                    |          |           |                               |                   |
|                | τoΦă: he protected her. |          |           |                               |                   |

NOTE.—Suffix 3d pers. sing. masc. to Prepositions has ăT:; e.g.

ăT: in him.

ăT: to, or for him.

## 2. Possessive Suffixes to Nouns.

They are, to a certain degree, similar to the preceding.

|                 | SINGULAR.      |          |                | PLURAL.        |         |
|-----------------|----------------|----------|----------------|----------------|---------|
|                 | Masc.          | Fem.     | Com.           | Com.           | PLURAL. |
| 3.              | ă, or ăΦ: his. | ăΦ: her. |                | 3. ăTΦ: their. |         |
| .. hon.         | .              | .        | ăTΦ: his, her. |                |         |
| 2. com. U: thy. |                | ă: thy.  |                | 2. ăTU: your.  |         |
| .. hon. 1.      | .              | .        | ăTU: your.     |                |         |
| .. . . . . 2.   | .              | .        | ăΦ: your.      |                |         |
| 1.              | .              | .        | ă: my.         | 1. ăTă: our.   |         |

Ex.—ăT: "House," with Suffixes.

|               | SINGULAR.       |                 |                     | PLURAL.         |         |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------|---------|
|               | Masc.           | Fem.            | Com.                | Com.            | PLURAL. |
| 3.            | ăT: his house.  | ăTΦ: her house. |                     | ăTΦTΦ: their h. |         |
| .. hon.       | .               | .               | ăTΦTΦ: his (her) h. |                 |         |
| 2.            | ăTU: thy house. | ăTă: thy house. |                     | ăTΦTU: your h.  |         |
| .. hon. 1.    | .               | .               | ăTΦTU: your h.      |                 |         |
| .. . . . . 2. | .               | .               | ăTΦ: your house.    |                 |         |
| 1.            | .               | .               | ăT: my house.       | ăTΦTă: our h.   |         |

*3. Prefixed Relative Pronouns.*

There are two; *i.e.* **פ:** for the Preterite, and **פָנָם:** for the rest; *e.g.* **פָנָם:** **מִתְּרָא:** "the man who came." **פָנָם:** **פָזָה:** "The day which comes"; *i.e.* "the coming," "following day." See more under the Verbs.

*4. Prefixed Distributive Pronoun.*

There is but one, which has been mentioned already, under the Numerals: it is, **לֹאַ:** or **לֹאַ:** **לֹאַתְּרָאַתְּ:** **פָזָה:** "Every three days." Prepositions have the power of absorbing the first letter; when care must be taken not to confound the remaining **P** — with the Relative Pronoun; bearing in mind, that the Relative itself would be absorbed by the Preposition: nor stands it, except before Verbs.

~~~~~

CHAP. IV.

ON THE VERBS.

The Verb being, next to the Noun, the most essential part of speech, we are to give it our fullest consideration. In entering upon it, we treat, 1. On its Formation and Quality; 2. On the Derivations, or different Forms or Voices of Verbs; 3. On their Flexion; 4. On their Conjugation; 5. On the Affixion of Pronouns to Verbs.

SECTION I.

Formation and Quality of Verbs.

1. The Verb, in general, seems to represent the chief developement of those roots of the language which are contained in the Noun. The original idea of the Noun is exhibited as a thing of time, found in a certain condition, and undergoing or producing various actions and changes. This consideration implies, that the Verb, in general, originates in the Noun. In the Hebrew, we can trace its course from the Primitive Nominal Form, through the Participle (in Kal), to the 3d pers. masc. preterite; the latter being, in all the Semitic Languages, the grammatical root of the Verb. In the Amharic, the Constructive Mood, of which we shall speak afterwards, seems to be the medium of transition from the Primitive Noun to the 3d pers. masc. preterite of the Verb.

2. Now the latter, the 3d masc. pers. sing. of the preterite in the Simple Forms of Verbs, constitutes, as has been just now alluded to, the origin of all the other Verbal Forms; the same as, in our languages, the Infinitive; or in the Greek, the Latin, the Italian, and others, the 1st pers. sing. of the present tense: on this account it is put forward, for grammatical and

lexical purposes, as the radix, or rather (because the true radices of the Verbs are contained in the Noun) as the stem, from which all the other forms branch off. In the Amharic, it presents various formations, as well as the Noun—bilitera, trilatera, quadrilatera, and plurilatera: but in it, as well as in the Noun, the majority consists of trilateral forms; which majority is still augmented, whenever the present contracted biliteral forms, and many plurilaterals evidently amplified, are restored to their original fulness or simplicity.

3. In reference to *Quality*, then, the Verbs present two grand divisions; i.e. *Perfect* and *Imperfect* Verbs, which again may be sub-divided in other classes. *Perfect* Verbs are those which are flexible in, at least, several Derivations, and throughout all the Moods, Tenses, and Persons in Conjugation, without losing any of their Radicals. *Imperfect* Verbs are either Defective, Augmented, or Irregular.

Note.—(a) Perfect Verbs may be divided into Primitives, i.e. whose origin cannot be traced to any further root; and Derivatives, which have for their origin either a Noun (Denominatives), or another Verb (Verbals). We subjoin here a few specimens of each.

PRIMITIVES.

ΦΩΖ: he buried.

ΦΩΔ: he chastised.

ΜΑΛΗ: he turned, returned.

ΠΔΞ: he covered.

ΠΓΔ: he worshipped.

DENOMINATIVES.

ΗΠΩΖ: he was honoured.

Original Noun.

ΓΛΑ: he revealed.

ΗΠΛ: honour.

ΜΑΛΗΖ: he testified.

ΓΔΛΑ: the public.

ΠΙΝΟΤ: he remained.

ΨΩΛΗΖ: witness.

ΠΖΗΤ: was flatulent.

ΠΩΣΩΤ: Sabbath.

ΠΖΗΤ: blessing.

ΠΩΣΩΤ: blessing.

ΧΑΙΡΗΦΔ: crucified.

ΜΩΣΩΦΔ: cross, crucifix.

VERBS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Original Verb.

ΜΑΛΗΖ: he was glorious.

ΠΖ: it flourished, he was glorious.

ΜΑΛΗΤ: he laid a foundation.

ΩΖ: he built.

(b) Under Defective Verbs, we mean, (1) Those which occasionally lose some of the Radicals; and (2) Such as have not all the Moods or Tenses, or Persons in conjugation. They will be mentioned in their proper places.

(c) Irregular Verbs are of various kinds:

- A. Such in which the Afformatives are irregular.
- B. Such as have either the first or second, or second and third Radical Letters contracted.
- C. Geminants.
- D. Reduplicated and Transposed forms.

All these will be exhibited, with their respective Conjugations, after the Regular or Perfect Verb.

SECTION II.

Various Derivations, or different Forms or Voices of Verbs.

1. In every language, the original idea of a Verb must be determinable by the relation of the subject to the object; and those various relations must be in some way or other expressible by the form of the Verb. The state of any subject of speech, or its action, is either confined to itself, or it exerts an influence on an object, or is itself the object of extraneous influence. This circumstance renders, in every language, three classes of Verbs, or three conditions of the same verb, necessary; i.e. neutrality (immanence), action upon other objects, and suffering. In the English Grammars, these qualities are called *Voces*; in the Semitic languages, *Conjugations*, or better, *Derivations*.

2. The ways to express these Voices are different in different languages, according to the pliability and vigour the latter possess.

The more original and vigorous a language is, we conceive, the more will it be able to derive all it requires, for the purpose of expressing the various relations of the verb, from the original verb itself, without the assistance of auxiliaries, and without circumscription: and this seems to show the superiority of the Semitic over the European Languages; because the former fully possess that power, while the latter are deficient in it.

In the English, the Passive Voice is not expressible, but by the Auxiliary *To be*. The Greek language has the power of expressing it by a change of the Active in the termination, converting ω in *oμαί*, &c. The Transitive is, in a few instances, formed by a change of the vowel, as "to fell" (i.e. make fall), from "to fall"; sometimes by Prepositions, as "to enforce," "to belabour," &c.; but, on the whole, European languages are deficient in this respect.

3. In the Semitic languages, the form of the original verb is altered, either by the mere change of vowels in the same radical consonants, or by an addition of servile letters with a suitable change of vowels, in order to express the various determinations and modifications, i.e. Voices or Conjugations, of which the verb is susceptible. Of these derivations, the

Hebrew Verb has seven; the Arabic, thirteen; the Ethiopic, ten different forms. For the Amharic, Ludolf has assigned but four Conjugations; but an attention to the following will show that there are many more.

4. As the Triliterals are the most numerous and the most perfect words, we present the reader, first, with a list of all the Forms of Conjugation, to which the perfect Trilateral Verb is liable. And since all these forms do not proceed from any single stem, we take several stems together. The Verbs which will serve us for this purpose are the following:

ሙለስ : <i>act.</i> he returned.	ከበረ : he burst.
ከበረ : he was glorious, respectable.	(ደረገ: non occ.)
ስይብ : he reviled.	እያደገ : he did.
ንረ : he said.	ድንහ : was blunt.
መተተ : he contradicted.	ፈተለ : spun.
መስላ : he resembled.	በረቃ : he fulminated.*
ወረዳ : he descended.	

LIST OF CONJUGATIONS OF THE REGULAR AND PERFECT TRILITERAL VERB.

- I. **ሙለስ**: *act.* "he returned," "repeated." **ከበረ**: *neut.* "he was respectable."
- II. **ስይብ**: *intens.* "he scolded exceedingly."
- III. **እከበረ**: *trs.* "he honoured."
- IV. **ተመለስ**: *pass.* "was returned." *refl.* "returned."
- V. **ኋጥገ**: *trs. & caus.* "he made speak," "caused to speak."
- VI. **ተፍጻ**: *contin.* "he spoke." *intens.* **ተስይብ**: "reviled," "blasphemed;" *i.q.* **ስይብ**:: **ተመካገ**: *recipr.* "he counselled," "gave and took advice."
- VII. **ተምዋገት**: *recipr.* "he disputed."
- VIII. **እስመለስ**: *caus.* "he caused to return."

* These are the known forms of each of these Verbs: **ሙለስ**: **ተመለስ**: **እስመለስ**: **ተመለስስ**: **ተመለስስ**:: **ከበረ**: **እከበረ**: **እስከበረ**:: **ስይብ**: **ስይብ**: **እስይብ**: **ተስይብ**: **ተስይብ**:: **ንረ**: **ኋጥገ**: **ተፍጻ**: **ተፍጻ**:: **ድንහ**: **እያደገ**: **እያደገ**:: **መተተ**: **ተመተ**: **ተምዋገት**:: **መስላ**: **ተመስላ**: **እስመስላ**: **እስመስላ**:: **ወረዳ**: **አውረዳ**: **አውረዳ**:: **ከበረ**: **እከበረ**: **ተከበረ**: **ተከበረ**:: **ተስበረ**:: (ደረገ):: **እደረገ**: **ተደረገ**: **አስደረገ**: **እደረደገ**:: **ድንහ**: **እያዘ**: **እያዘ**:: **ፈተለ**: **ተፈተለ**: **አስፈተለ**: **ፈተለ**:: **በረቃ**: **አስበረቃ**::

- ix. አስመጥል: *caus.* & *intens.* "he caused to resemble," "dissimulated," "flattered."
- x. አስተኞች: *caus.* "he made speak." አስተስረም: "procured for-giveness." አስተንፈስ: *reiter.* "he inhaled and exhaled," "he respired," "breathed."
- xi. ተዋዋሩ: *intens., pass., & refl.*, "he was completely humbled," "humbled himself completely."
- xii. ተባበሩ: *intens.* "broke into pieces."
- xiii. አደራጋ: *intens.* "he performed great things."
- xiv. ተመለሰስ: *reiter.* "he returned repeatedly;" *i. e.* "walked." ተመከከሉ: *recipr.* "he consulted with others," "took and gave advice."
- xv. ተፍጋሩ: *reiter.* & *recipr.* "conversed with another," "spoke frequently."
- xvi. ዳነዣ: *intens.* & *intrans.* "to be blunt," "stiff," "obdurate."
- xvii. አድነዣ: *trs.* "to blunt," "stiffen," "obdurate."
- xviii. ተመለስስ: *refl. & pass.* "he returned," "was returned."
- xix. ተስቀመጥ: "he reviled."
- xx. አድገት: *intens.* "he talked one out of any thing," "dissuaded."
- xxi. አውጥተኛ: "he folded his hands."
- xxii. ፈተላተል: "he rubbed thin between his fingers."
- xxiii. ተፈተላተል: *pass.* "it was rubbed thin between the fingers."
- xxiv. አንጻብሩዋ: *diminut.* "it shone," "glittered," "sparkled," "re-splended."

These Forms are not of equally frequent occurrence. Those occurring most frequently, are, Nos. i. iii. iv. v. vi. viii. x. xiv. and xv. The rest are more rare.*

5. Observations on this List:—Most of the forms it contains are analogous to the forms of derivation in the Hebrew, the Arabic, and more especially in the Ethiopic Verb; which will be evident from the following remarks:

i. መለስ: comprises the Ethiopic and Arabic i. and ii. forms, and the Hebrew *Kal* and *Piel*.

* We beg to observe here, that, on account of the haste in which the Dictionary was prepared for press, the Forms xvi. to xxiii. were not arranged in it under their roots; as the Author was not then aware, that they were simple derivations from the Trilateral Verb. To this conviction he arrived when drawing up this Grammar.

II. ተቋበ፡, of rare occurrence, answers the Ethiopic and Arabic III. form, ተጋበ፡ and فاعل.

III. እነበረ፡ answers to the Ethiopic iv. and v., and to the Arabic iv.

IV. ተመለሰ፡ corresponds with the Eth. vi. and vii., and with the Arabic v.

V. አቶገረ፡ “he made speak,” answers the Arabic xi.

VI. ተተገረ፡ “he spoke,” answers the Eth. vii. ተጋበ፡ and Arabic vi. تَفَاعِلَ.

VII. ተምቀጥ፡ seldom occurs, and has no correspondent in the other languages.

VIII. IX. and X. answer the Ethiopic and Arabic x. እነተዋበ፡
እስተቀዱል.

The rest are peculiar to the Amharic; although modifications of the same forms occur, especially in the Arabic.

6. Before we proceed, we notice the Conjugations of the other classes of Verbs:

I. TRILITERALS WHOSE FIRST RADICAL IS A GUTTURAL.

They are affected by the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 2. B. 3. C.

The following list contains their several conjugations:

Radices, አሙኑ፡ “he believed”; and አለፈ፡ “he passed.”

I. አሙኑ፡ “he believed.”

II. ተሙኑ፡ “he was believed,” “creditable,” “trustworthy”; “he entrusted.”

III. አጥሙኑ፡ “he persuaded,” “he made believe.”

IV. አስተማኑ፡ “he entrusted,” “accredited,” “attested.”

V. ተለለፈ፡ “he trespassed,” “varied.”

VI. አስተለለፈ፡ recipr. & trs. “he made pass in different ways.”*

* Other Verbs of this class: አረሙ፡ አረሰ፡ አረቀ፡ አረහ፡ አረደ፡ አረገ፡ አረጋ፡ ሻረፈ፡ አዋፈ፡ አበረ፡ አበደ፡ አበድ፡ አበጠ፡ አተመ፡ አነሰ፡ አቅቀ፡ አንጋ፡ አከለ፡ አወቀ፡ አወሰ፡ አከለ፡ አዘና፡ አደላ፡ አደሙ፡ አደረ፡ አገም፡ አገዝ፡ አመረ፡ አያረ፡ አይደ፡ አያሰ፡ ሻበየ፡ ሻረቀ፡ The Dictionary shows, that the original Forms of these Verbs are not all of prima አ፡; but in the Amharic, they may be all comprised in this form.

II. GEMINANT TRILITERALS.

They are originally Bilinguals, whose second radical letter has been doubled. See Part I. Ch. VII. 2. D.

List of Triliteral Geminants.

- I. ΛΦΦ: *intrs.* & *act.* "went away," "dismissed."
 - II. ΚΣΦΦ: *trs.* "he thinned," "rarefied."
 - III. ΤΛΦΦ: *pass.* "he was dismissed"; *refl.* "he abandoned himself."
 - IV. ΚΛΦΦ: *intens.* "he yawned." ΚΠΡΩ: "he persecuted."
 - V. ΤΠΡΩ: *pass. int.* "he was persecuted."
 - VI. ΚΠΩΜΩΔ: *caus.* "he embittered," "exasperated."
 - VII. ΚΖΠΤΤ: "he glided down" on his posteriors; "he cheated."
 - VIII. ΤΖΠΤΤ: *pass.* "he was pushed down," "was cheated."
 - IX. ΤΖΙΛΛ: "he fornicated."
 - X. ΚΖΙΩΔΔ: } "stretched himself." *
 - XI. ΤΖΙΩΔΔ: }

III. GEMINANTS WHOSE FIRST RADICAL IS A GUTTURAL. †

- i. አሙሙ: *intrs.* "was painful"; *trs.* "gave pain."
 - ii. ታሙሙ: *pass.* "felt pain."
 - iii. አጥሙሙ: *caus.* "gave pain," "made sick."
 - iv. ልቦታሙሙ: *sympathetic*, "nursed sick persons."

IV. PERFECT BILITERALS. †

- I. ብኩ: "was beautiful." የጊዜ: "was great."
 - II. አገኗ: "beautified," "praised." አድጊ: "he grew."
 - III. ተሰጠ: "was given."

[†] እመመ፡ ከዚ፡ ከዚ፡ እነዚ፡ እነዚ፡

‡ ၁၃: ၂၇: ၂၈: ၂၉: ၂၀: ၂၁: ၂၂: ၂၃: ၂၄: ၂၅: ၂၆: ၂၇: ၂၈: ၂၉:

- iv. አስተና: “he beautified,” “glorified.”
 - v. አሳደግ: “made grow,” “trained,” “educated.”
 - vi. ገዢ: “flourished.”
 - vii. አገዢ: “made to flourish.”
 - viii. ተሰጥመ: “to betray each other.”

V. IMPERFECT BILITERALS. Prima η::

- i. **አሸች**: "he saw."
 - ii. **ተሸች**: pass. "was seen," "appeared."
 - iii. **አነጻች**: trs. "made to see," "showed."
 - iv. **አነጻታሸች**: trs. "made to be seen," "brought into sight."
 - v. **ተረሸች**: recipr. "looked at each other," "was over against each other."
"made look at each other."

VI. DEFECTIVE VERBS; i.e. Verbs which have dropped one or two Radical Letters, either in the middle or at the end.

1. Verbs with Absorbed Guttural at the end.

- I. ገበ: *intrs.* "he entered." Eth. ተጠኑ:
 - II. እገበ: *trs.* "he introduced."
 - III. ተገበ: "it was proper," "becoming," "it belonged."
 - IV. እገበ: *act.* "he married."
 - V. ተገበ: *pass.* "was married."
 - VI. እስተዋዣ: *caus.* "made go in," "introduced."
 - VII. በቋቋ: *intens.* "was quite sufficient."
 - VIII. እገባባ: *reiter.* "used to marry," "frequently cohabited," "behaved properly."
 - IX. እጽታ: *intens.* "he comforted."
 - X. ተጽታ: *pass.* "was comforted." ተከናደ: *recipr.* "quarrelled with each other."*

2. Verbs with Absorbed Guttural in the middle.

- I. οὐδὲ: Eth. οὐδὴ: "he swore."
 - II. ἀσπεῖται: *trs.* "made swear," "administered an oath."
 - III. ὑπεῖται: *pass.* "was sworn."
 - IV. ἀποσπεῖται: *trs.* "made swear."
 - V. ἀποτιθέται: *frequentat.* "distributed by casting lots."
 - VI. ὑπεῖται: *recipr.* "mutually swore," "conspired."
 - VII. ὑπεῖται: *intens.* "besought," "adjured."*

3. Verbs with an Absorbed P: in the middle. †

- I. **վառ:** *act.* "he sold." **մ.ք:** *neutr.* "he went."
 - II. **հմաք:** *trs.* "he made go," "drove the threshing oxen."
 - III. **Ելվե:** *pass.* "was sold."
 - IV. **Երպո:** "he traded." **Երք:** "made a treaty."
 - V. **հնադք:** *caus.* "made go."

4. Verbs with an Absorbed Ω: in the middle†.

- I. **ΦΩΣ**: *neut.* “he stood.”
 - II. **ΔΦΩΣ**: *trs.* “made to stand,” “erected.”
 - III. **ΤΦΩΣ**: *pass.* “was erected.”
 - IV. **ΤΤΦΩΣ**: *intens.* “he withheld,” “resisted.”
 - V. **ΔΠΦ-Ρ**: *caus.* “he detained,” “caused to wait.”
 - VI. **ΤΦΦ-ΩΣ**: } *intens.*
 - VII. **ΤΦΦΩΣ**: } *intens.* “ultimately resisted.”

5. *Verbs with two Absorbed Gutturals*, derived from Quadrilaterals. They are but few in number, and only three Conjugations have been discovered §.

- I. **እለ**: "to be loose," "lax."
 - II. **እለለ**: *act.* "to loosen," "slacken."
 - III. **ተገበ**: *intens.* "to stamp," "pound," "clapper," "to chatter."

ԵՄՆ: ՊԱՓ: ՊՈՒ: ԸԹ: ՌԱՄ: ՓԱՄ: ՓԲ: ՀՀ: Ի-Հ: ԱՀ: ՑԱՄ:

§ 88: 22: ተከ: ማ፡ የኩ፡ የኩ፡

6. *Verbs doubly imperfect.*

(a) Beginning with an **ח**: and having an Absorbed Guttural at the end. There are but few (**חפ**: and **חא**: not being included): **חט**: **חטף**: **חאָ**:

- I. **חט**: negat. "to want."
- II. **חטּ**: neg. pass. "to be wanted."
- III. **חַטְטּ**: caus. "to deprive."

(b) *Beginning with פ: which absorbs a Guttural.*

- I. **פּה**: Eth. **חִזּה**: act. "to seize."
- II. **חִפּה**: trs. "caused another to seize."
- III. **חִפּה**: pass. "was seized."
- IV. **חִפּחּ**: caus. "caused to seize," "betrayed."
- V. **חִפּחּ**: pass. frequentat. & recipr. "was frequently or alternately seized," "seized frequently," "completely," or "reciprocally."

(c) *Various forms of the Verb חאָ: "To say."*

Not to be confounded with the Auxiliary **חאָ**: "To be." Its forms are partly derived from **חאָ**:, partly from **פּעָל**: Eth.

- I. **חאָ**: "he said."
- II. **חִזּאָ**: "to deceive by talking."
- III. **חִזּאָ**: "to be said," "called."
- IV. **חִזּאָ**: "to be deceived."
- V. **חִזּאָ**: "to rumour in public."
- VI. **חִזּוּל**: } recipr. "to say to each other."
- VII. **חִזּוּל**: } recipr. "to say to each other."
- VIII. **חִזּוּל**: "he persuaded."
- IX. **חִזּוּל**: "he was talked into any thing," "was persuaded."
- X. **חִזּוּל**: "he persuaded," "cheated by talking."

(d) Conjugation of the Verb **תּוֹ**:: and **סּוֹטּ**::

VII. VARIOUS CONJUGATIONS OF QUADRILITERAL AND PLURILITERAL VERBS.

1. *Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals.*

Stems: **לְסּוֹטּוֹ**: "to be green." **לְפּוֹטּוֹ**: "to bedaub." **לְפּוֹטּוֹ**: "to shake." **לְמַלְמַדּ**: "to cudgel." **פּוֹטּוֹפּוֹ**: "to excavate." **פּוֹטּוֹפּוֹ**: "to bruise." (לְמַלְמַדּ::)

- I. **לְסּוֹטּוֹ**: neut. "it was green," "fresh."
- II. **חַלְסּוֹטּוֹ**: trs. "he made green," "verdant," "refreshed."

- III. **ΤΔΦΛΦ**: *pass.* "he was bedaubed."
 - IV. **ΚΙΨΙΦ**: *act. intens.* "he shook."
 - V. **ΤΔΦΛΦ**: *refl.* "bedaubed," "washed himself."
 - VI. **ΖΠΛΦΛΦ**: *caus.* "he caused bedaubing."
 - VII. **ΖΩΩΩΩΩ**: *act.* "beat," "shook."
 - VIII. **ΤΖΦΩΦΩ**: *pass. & neutr.* "trembled."
 - IX. **ΖΖΦΗΦΗ**: *act.* "he stirred," "moved."
 - X. **ΤΖΦΗΦΗ**: *pass. & neutr.* "was moved," "moved."
 - XI. **ΖΩΖΦΗΦΗ**: *trs.* "he moved."*

2. Derivates from Triliterals having one Radical doubled and transposed.

- I. ደለጻዊ: *neut.* "it was blunt."
 - II. እደለጻዊ: *trs.* "he blunted."
 - III. ተደለጻዊ: *pass.* "was blunted."
 - IV. አነጻዎች: *trs.* "he gave success."
 - V. ተነጻዎች: *neut.* "he succeeded," "prospered."
 - VI. ስንጻጌዎች: *neutr.* "it became knotty."

But few verbs belong to this class.

3. Geminants.

We rank under this class only such forms as cannot, with our present knowledge of the language, be considered to belong to Form XVI. of the regular Trilateral Verb. This class is but small:

- I. ἦ-πλλ: *intrans.* "he fled," "escaped."
 II. Τρυστή: *pass.* "was destroyed."

* The Verbs of this class are very numerous. The following do belong to them:

თოკთა: თოკთა: გიგი: მირი: ფლობ: ფ-კფ-კ: ფ-იფ-შ:
 იკიკ: იჩიჩ: თოკთა: თ-იუ-ი: იჩიჩ: ითით: თკთკ:
 თოფოფ: თ-ზუ-ზ: ტოტი: ტიტი: თკოკ: ტკტკ: თითი:
 თხეთ: თკოკ: თ-დუ-დ: ზიზი: ზიზ: რირ: ზიზი:
 თლოლ: ზკზკ: ზ-კუ-კ: ზ-დუ-დ: ფლობ: ფიფი:
 დლილ: დლილ: დიდი: დლილ: დლილ: დიდი: დლილ:
 დლილ: დლილ: დიდი: დლილ: დლილ: დიდი: And the Augmented Forms:
ზიზიკიკ: (for ზიზიკიკ) ტყიჩიჩ:

- III. **ԴՎՊԱՅ:** *neutr.* "walked nimbly," "affectedly," "proudly."
 IV. **ՀՈՊԵՓՓ:** *trs.* "he warned," "cautioned."
 V. **ՀՅԻՌԱՅ:** *act.* "he rolled about."
 VI. **ԴՅԻՌԱՅ:** *pass.* "was rolled about."

4. Quadrilaterals and Plurilaterals of different Radicals.

- I. **սովորէ:** *neutr.* "was glorious."
 - II. **հօսմորէ:** *trs.* "he glorified."
 - III. **Դօսմորէ:** *pass.* "he was glorified."
 - IV. **Հռիքութ:** *intens.* "he dismissed."
 - V. **ԴՌՔՈՒԹ:** *pass.* "he was dismissed," "took his leave."
 - VI. **Հռոմորէ:** *caus.* "he caused to glorify."
 - VII. **ԴՊՐՈՅ:** *intens.* "he overthrew completely."
 - VIII. **ԴՂԱՊՐՈՅ:** *pass. intens.* "he was completely overthrown."
 - IX. **ԴՌՔՊՈՒԹ:** *recipr. & reiter.* "took leave from each other." *

SECTION III.

On the Flexion of Verbs.

The Flexion of Verbs treats on their *Moods*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

1. Moods of the Amharic Verb.

The Amharic Verb has Seven Moods: (a) the *Indicative*; (b) the *Contingent*; (c) the *Subjunctive*; (d) the *Constructive*; (e) the *Imperative*; (f) the *Infinitive*; (g) the *Participle*.

* 1. This class is most numerous, and comprises a great variety of Verbs, as the following List will show: **ՍՈՂԻԻ**: **ՄՈՒԽԱ**: **ՄՈՒԽՈ**: **ՄՈՒԽ-Ո**: **ՄՈՒԽԱ**:
ՈՈՓՈ: **ՈՒԽՈ**: **ՈՒԽԱ**: **ՈՒԽՈ**: **ՈՒԽՈՓ**: **ՈՒԽՈՂ**: **ՈՒԽ-Ո**: **ՈՒԽՈ**:
ՓՈՓՈ: **ՓՈՓՈ**: **ՓՈՓՈ**: **ՓՈՓՈ**: **ՓՈՓՈ**: **ՓՈՓՈ**: **ՓՈՓՈ**: **ՓՈՓՈ**:
ՏՀԴ-Մ: **ՏՀԴ-Ո**: **ՏՀԴ-Ո**: **ՏՀԴ-Ո**: **ՏՀԴ-Ո**: **ՏՀԴ-Ո**: **ՏՀԴ-Ո**: **ՏՀԴ-Ո**:
(ՓՒՂՈ): **ՀԻՆՈ**: **ՀԻԴ-Հ**: **ՀԻՓՈ**: **ՀԻՂԻ**: **ՀԻՂՈ**: **ՀԻՂՈ**: **ՓԻՇՈ**:
Դ-ՀՈ: **Դ-ՀՈ**: **Դ-ՀՈ**: **Դ-ՀՈ**: **Դ-ՀՈ**: **Դ-ՀՈ**: **Դ-ՀՈ**: **Դ-ՀՈ**:
Դ-ՀՈ: **Դ-ՀՈ**: **Դ-ՀՈ**: **Դ-ՀՈ**: **Դ-ՀՈ**: **Դ-ՀՈ**: **Դ-ՀՈ**: **Դ-ՀՈ**:

2. Most of the forms comprised in this List are Derivative; either from Nouns, as **סְמִינָה**:
סְמִינָה: **תְּמִימָה**: **וְקִמָּה**: or, as most of the rest, from Trilateral Verbs. The use
of the liquid **ת**: in this amplification of forms, is remarkable; e.g. **אַלְמָנָה**: is from the Arabic
عَصْ، **אַלְמָנָת**: from the Hebrew **בְּבָשָׂר**, **אַלְמָנוֹת**: from the Eth. **אַלְמָנוֹת**::
אַלְמָנוֹת: from the Eth. **אַלְמָנוֹת**: &c.

A. The *Indicative* Mood has nothing particular. It has two Tenses, the Preterite and the Present (or Future); besides which, other Tenses are formed by the Contingent and the Constructive, in connexion with Auxiliaries.

B. The *Contingent* is the simple verbal form with the Personal Preformatives and Terminations, and serves for the Indicative as well as for the Subjunctive, according as it is either, (1) Simple; or (2) has Conjunctions prefixed, and what the nature of those Conjunctions is; or (3) whether any, and what sort of Auxiliary, is attached to it. (See pp. 66, 67.)

C. The *Conjunctive* or *Subjunctive* Mood is not used in the Amharic, except for the purpose of expressing a desire, or request, or obligation. Its peculiarity consists in its Radicals, after the prefixion of the Personal Serviles, assuming the form of the Imperative. (See pp. 68, 69.)

D. A curious Mood, and peculiar to the Amharic and Tigrê languages, having its beginning undeveloped in the Ethiopic Infinitive, is the *Constructive*. It is formed by the simple root of the verb with Personal Affirmatives; and has four forms; one simple, one augmented, and two compound forms. (See pp. 70, 71.)

E. The form of the *Imperative* (its nature being the same as in other languages) is short. (See p. 71.)

F. The *Infinitive*, or Verbal Substantive, is formed by the prefixion of **በ**; to the Simple Form.

G. The *Participle* presents five; viz. three Simple, and two Compound Forms. The three former, partaking of a nominal character, have been exhibited in the Table of Derivative Nouns: the two latter are formed by the Finite Verb Preterite and Contingent, to which certain Preformatives are prefixed; and they retain their flexibility, i.e. capability of being conjugated. Besides this, they are all declinable. (See pp. 72, 73.)

We come now to speak,

II. Of the Tenses of the Amharic Verb.

They are not so exactly distinguished in the Amharic as in our European Languages: in fact, the Abyssinians have not, strictly speaking, more than two divisions of time; i.e. the *Past* and the *Present*; the *Present* being used also for the Future. The *Past* is subdivided into the *Perfect*, and *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*; the *Perfect* being rendered by the simple Preterite form, and the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*, (which are not distinguished from each other) being composed either of the Contingent or the Simple Constructive, with the Preterite Auxiliary **በ**: The *Present*, which might be, perhaps with propriety, called *Aorist*, because it is appli-

cable to the Future as well as to the Present Tense, is a form composed of the Contingent and the Auxiliary **חָאַם**: In order to distinguish the Future from the Present, where the context is not in itself clear enough, certain phrases are adopted which leave no doubt that the time is yet to come in which the action &c. of the subject is to take place. But more of this afterwards. (See p. 66.)

3. The Number of Conjugation is but twofold, Singular and Plural.

4. *The Persons.*

There are, in reality, not more than *three* for each Number; viz. the person speaking, the person spoken to, and the person spoken of; but the grammatical forms are more, as has been shown under the article of Pronouns, Chap. III.; namely, seven forms for the Singular, and three for the Plural. Now the Semitic Languages have this in common, that the personal distinctions in the Conjugations of Verbs are expressed by certain letters affixed or prefixed, or both, to the Radicals of the Verb; and in so doing, the act of Conjugation is accomplished. We call the prefixed letters *Preformatives*, and the affixed ones *Afformatives*. The following List exhibits them.

(a) *Preformatives.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Com. Gender.	
3d pers. masc. לְ—:	3. לְ—:
... ... fem. תְ—:	
2d ... m. & f. תִ—:	2. תִ—:
... ... hon. 1. לֹ—:	
... ... 2. תַ—:	
1st ... com. חָ—:	1. חָבֵ—:

(b) *Afformatives.*

SINGULAR.								
Pret.	Pres.	Subj.	Constr.	Com.	Pret.	Pres.	Subj.	Constr.
3. masc. none.	none.	—o.		3.	— ³ u,	— ³ u, — ³ u,	— ³ o:	
.. fem.	— ³ t:	... ..	—ā.					
2. masc.	— ³ u:	... ..	—³ a ³ u:	2.	— ³ a ³ T ³ U:	— ³ u, — ³ u,	— ³ a ³ T ³ U:	
.. fem.	— ³ ī:	.. ī	— ³ a ³ ī:					
.. hon. 1.	— ³ ū	.. ū	— ³ a ³ ō:					
... . 2.	— ³ a ³ T ³ U:	.. ū	— ³ a ³ T ³ U:					
1. com.	— ³ u:	... ..	—ē.	1.	— ³ t:	none	— ³ z::	

What hitherto has been said, may suffice for the preliminaries: we therefore now proceed to the *Conjugation of the Verbs.*

SECTION IV.

Conjugation of Verbs.

Before we enter upon the conjugation of the *Regular Verb*, we give the conjugation of the two *Auxiliary Verbs*:

ኩል: he is. **ነበረ**: he was;

and of the Irregular and Defective Verb Substantive, **ነው**: "he is."

A. **ኩል**: Eth. **ሁለዎ**: contr. **ሁለም**: "he is," "there is" (French, *il y a*), is used only in the Present; but that has a Preterite form.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	Masc.	Fem.	Common.	Common.
3d pers.	ኩል : he is.	ኩለች : she is.		ኩል : { they are, { he (hon.) is.
2d ..	ኩለህ :	ኩለዢ : thou art.		ኩለቸው : you are.
.... hon. 1.	.	.	ኩል : { you	
.... 2.	.	.	ኩለቸው : { are.	
1st ..	.	.	ኩለሁ : I am.	ኩለቸ : we are.

NOTE 1.—This verb is not to be confounded with the Irregular Verb **ኩል**: "he said"; which will be given, when we treat of the Irregular Verbs in general.

2. The 3d pers. sing. and plur., combined with Suffixed Pronouns, have the same signification as "*est*" and "*sunt*" in the Latin, with the Dative of the Personal Pronoun; e.g. *Mhi est*, "I have." So in the Amharic,

ብር: **ኩለቸ**: I have (possess) money.

ልጅቶ: **ኩለች**: he has (possesses) children.

3. As Auxiliary, the 3d pers. sing. masc. is changed into **ኩል**: e.g.

ያላል: for **ያል**: **ኩል**: he says.

ተቀማዋል: for **ተቀማው**: **ኩል**: he is sitting.

B. **ነበረ**: "he was," is used as Auxiliary for the Past Tenses in the Indicative and Subjunctive. It has only the Preterite.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Common.
3.	ነበረ : { he (ነበሩ): { was.	ነበረች : she was.		ነበረ : they were.
2.	ነበሩ :	ነበሩን : { thou { wast.		ነበሩቸው : { you { were.
.. hon. 1.	.	.	ነበረ : you were.	
... 2.	.	.	ነበረቸው : { you { were.	
1.	.	.	ነበሩ : I was.	ነበሩቸ : we were.

NOTE.—When used as an Auxiliary, ካር: serves often for any person Singular or Plural; e.g.

ተዋወጠው፡ ካር፡ they were sitting.

ተሙጥ፡ ካር፡ thou wouldest come.

C. ካ፡ He is.

This verb is singularly anomalous. It consists of merely one radical letter ካ፡, to which the Verbal Suffixes are attached, instead of Personal Affirmatives. Is used only in one form, which we may call the Preterite of the Indicative, because it resembles that more than any other form.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Common.	
3d pers.	ካዕ፡ he is.	ቍት፡ she is.		ቍቃዕ፡ they are	
2d pers.	ኩ፡ thou art.	ኩ፡ thou art.		ቍቃቕ፡ you are	
.. hon. 1.			ቍቃሁ፡ } you are.		
.. 2.			ካዕ፡ } you are.		
1st pers.			ኩ፡ I am.	ኩ፡ we are.	

This is the regular form of this anomalous verb. Deviations are these: ካዕ፡, for the 3d pers. sing. masc. interrogative, "Is he?" In the Shoa Dialect, ካዕለ፡ for the regular ካዕ፡; e.g.

አንድታ፡ ካዕ፡ How is it? for አንድታ፡ ካዕ፡

A second deviation is ቁጥ፡, in the Shoa Dialect, "She is," for ቍት፡;

1. Conjugation of the Perfect and Trilateral Verbs.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Simple form ክበሩ፡ neut. "He was honourable." መላስ፡ act. "he turned." intrs. "he answered." ተያጋ፡ trs. "he scolded," "blasphemed."

(a) Indicative Mood.

a. PRETERITE.

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	Fem.	Com.
3d pers.	ክበሩ፡ { he was ho- nourable.	ክበሩች፡ { she was ho- nourable.	
2d ..	ክበሩሁ፡	ክበሩሽ፡ { thou wast ho- nourable.	
.. hon. 1.			ክበሩ፡ } you were
.. 2.			ክበሩችሁ፡ } honourable.
1.			ክበሩ፡ I was honourable.

Common.

PLURAL.

3d pers. ክበሩ፡ they were honourable.

2d .. ክበሩችሁ፡ you were honourable.

1st .. ክበሩ፡ we were honourable.

β. PRESENT AND FUTURE.

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.	Common.
3d pers. ያኩብረል:	{ he is, will be hon.	{ she is, will be hon.
2. ጥኩብረሉ:	ጥኩብረለሁ:	{ thou art, wilt be hon.
... hon. 1.		ያኩብረሉ: { you are, or will
... 2.		ጥኩብረለሁ: { be hon.

1.	እኩብረሉ:	{ I am, shall be hon.
------------	---------------	-----------------------------

PLURAL.

Common,

3d pers. **ያኩብረሉ:** they are, will be honourable.2d .. **ጥኩብረለሁ:** you are, will be honourable.1st .. **እኩብረለሁ:** we are, shall be honourable.

NOTE 1.—Whether this form, when it occurs, is intended for the Present or for the Future Tense, generally depends on the context. In order, however, to leave no doubt when they speak of future things, they use the simple contingent form with additional particles; e.g. **እኩብር፡ ዘንድ፡ እለት፡** “I have (am) to be honourable.” **እኩብር፡ ዘንድ፡ ገዢ፡ እለት፡** “time is for me (to come) that I am to be honourable,” &c.

2. Personal Suffixes, and sometimes the Conjunction **ያሁ፡**, are infixed between the Simple Form and the Auxiliary.

(b.) CONTINGENT.

α. Simple.

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.	Common.
3d pers. ያኩብር፡	ጥኩብር፡	
2d .. ጥኩብር፡	ጥኩብር፡	
... hon. 1.		ያኩብሩ፡
... 2.		ጥኩብሩ፡
1st pers.		እኩብር፡

PLURAL.

Common.

ያኩብሩ፡**ጥኩብሩ፡****ያኩብሩ፡****ጥኩብሩ፡****እኩብሩ፡**

As this form is used for both the Indicative and the Subjunctive, as well as for the formation of Participles, we have given no translation of it; but shall present a few instances here, to illustrate its use:

gַּנְגֵּס: **חִזֶּבֶת:** in order that he may be honourable.

አንጻ: that he may be honourable.

አንድ ካ-ኝ: that he is honourable.

ብኩባር: or **እኩባር:** እንደሆነ: if he is (be) honourable.

ਨਿਨ੍ਹਾਂ: than that he should be honourable.

Εὐνοεῖς: while he is honourable.

PROPER: he that is honourable.

ՀԵՐՈԾՈՒ: he is not honourable.

The Present and Future of the Indicative, also, is a composition of the Contingent with the Auxiliary **kan**: which is omitted whenever the word receives any augmentation at the beginning or at the end, except Suffixes or Copulative Conjunctions.

B. COMPOUND.

SINGULAR.

3d pers. የዕኑ፡ ነፃ፡ they were, or had been honourable.

2d .. ተነጋሩችሁ፡ ነጋሩችሁ፡ you were, or had been honourable.

1st .. እንደር: እናር: we were, or had been honourable.

This form is used for the Subjunctive, as well as for the Indicative.

(c) *Subjunctive Mood.*

Is characterized by having the form of the Imperative Mood with the Personal Preformatives.

	SINGULAR.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Com.
3d pers.	ՔիուԸ: { let him be hon.	ՔիուԾ: { let her be hon.	
2. ..	ՔիուԸ:	ՔիուԾ: { mayest thou be hon.	
.. hon. 1.		ՔիուԾ: { may you	
... 2.		ՔիուԾ: { be hon.	
1. ..		ԱզիուԸ: { let me, may I, be hon.	
	PLURAL.		
	Common.		
3d pers.	ՔիուԾ:	may they, let them be honourable.	
2. ..	ՔիուԾ:	may you be honourable.	
1. ..	ԱզիուԾ:	may we, let us be honourable.	

NOTE 1.—As the Subjunctive is so nearly related to the Imperative, always expressing a wish, a request, or indirect command, it is natural that the Second Person Singular, in its direct form, and the same person in the Plural, is less frequently used than the remaining forms; for they use more generally the Imperative.

2. Several verbs are destitute of this form, and they use the Simple Contingent. It may therefore be of service to the Student, to give a list of those verbs of this class which have this form; and another of those which have not.

VERBS WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE FORM.

Ասսա: ԱՓա: ԱՌՈՒ: ԱՌՈՒ: ԱՐՄԱ:
 ԱՐՈՒ: ԱՐՃ: ԱՐՄ: ՄԱԼԻՒ: ՄԱԼՄ:
 ՄԱՀԱ: ՄԱՀՄ: ՄԱԽԱ: ՄԱԽԻ: ՄԱԽԻ:
 ՄՈՒՆ: ԱԼՄ: ՎՄՃ: ՎՃՓ: ՎՃԹ:
 ՎՓԲ: ՎՄՄ: ՀԻՌՈՒ: ՀԻ-ՌՈՒ: ՀԻ-Հ:
 ՀԿՄՍ: ՀՂՄՅ: ՀՂՄՅ: ՀՄՈՒ: ՀՃՔ:
 ՀՃՓ: ՌՈՒ: ՌՄԳԱ: ՌՃՓ: ՌՃԲ:
 ՌՃԳ: ՌՓՈՒ: ՌՈՒ: ՌՈՓ: ՌՈՒ:
 ՌՈՒ: ՌՃՈՒ: ՌՃՈՒ: ՌՃՈՒ: ՌՄՄՓ:
 ՌՄՄՆ: ՌԻՌՀ: ՌԻ-ՌՀ: ՌԻՐ: ՌՃՄ:
 ՓԱՄ: ՓՄՄ: ՓՎՄ: ՓՎՄ: ՓՎՄ:
 ՓՎՄ: ՓՎՄ: ՓՎՄ: ՓՎՄ: ՓՎՄ:

VERBS WITHOUT IT.

ԱՄՆ: ԱՄՃ: ԱՌՆ: ԱՌՆ:
 ԱՓՄՍ: ԱՓՌՈՒ: ԱՓՄ:
 ԱԽՈՒ: ԱՐ-ՄՄ: ՄԱԼՌՈՒ:
 ՄԱՀՓ: ՄԱՀՄ: ՎՄԻՀ:
 ՄՄԻՆ: ՄՄՂԱ: ՄՄՂՈՒ:
 ՄՄՂԻՒ: ՌԻՎ: ՌԻՎ:
 ՌՎԳ: ՌԼՄՍ: ՌՄՄԴ:
 ՌՄՄԴ: ՌՓՈՒ: ՌԻ-ՌՀ:
 ՌՃՀ: ՓԼՄՍ: ՓԼՄ:
 Փ-ՃՈՒ: ՓՓՈՒ: ՓՃՈՒ:
 Փ-ՃՈՒ: ՌՃՄ: ՌՓՈՒ:
 ՓՓՈՒ: ՌՓՈՒ: ՓՓՈՒ:

VERBS WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE FORM.

VERBS WITHOUT IT.

3. In verbs whose first radical has a diphthong, the latter is shortened into that diphthong which answers the sixth vowel order; e.g. **ΡΦ^υΣΤ:** "let him cut." from **Φ-ΣΩ::** **ΔΤΤΡΩ:** "do not be deficient."

4. The Subjunctive is so nearly related to the Imperative, that it yields all its forms to serve the latter, where that is deficient. So in the negative orders, prohibitions or warnings, where the Imperative cannot be used for having no Servile Preformatives; e. g.

ዶተሪ: do not tell.

ΔΤΩΡΦ: do not fall.

ዶንግር: do not kill.

ՃԵՐԱԿԴ; do not cut.

(d) *Constructive Mood.*

This is a singular Mood, which has nothing corresponding, either in our European or in the other Semitic Languages; although its form, as

far as the Simple one is concerned, answers the Ethiopic Infinitives ተበር፡ and ተተር፡; but this Mood is not an Infinitive. It has nothing of a Substantive character; whereas the Infinitive is the first Verbal Substantive, possessing both the characters of Substantive and Verb. Nor is there any other Mood to which it exactly corresponds: neither Participle nor Gerund, nor Finite Verb, will answer it; although it may be occasionally translated by either, and sometimes by an Adverb. It occupies an intermediate station between the Infinitive and the Finite Verb; has four forms, one of which is Simple, one Augmented, and two Compound; and is flexible, like the Finite Verb, having Affirmatives resembling the Suffixed Pronouns, partly of the Noun, and partly of the Verb. The Simple form is used for amplifying; the other forms, on account of the auxiliaries which are attached to them, for constituting sentences. When the nature of this Mood is understood, we hope the designation *Constructive* will be justified; not having been able to fix upon any better.

The Simple form ተበር፡ (a modification of the radix ተበር፡ “honour”), which may be considered as containing the idea of an agent, and of an action, or a concrete being, and an abstract state or condition, &c., assumes peculiar forms of Pronouns; which must not be taken as Possessive (Nominal), but as Personal (Verbal); nor as the other Verbal Suffixes which are in the Accusative; but they are Nominatives. Here it is:

a. FIRST FORM OF THE CONSTRUCTIVE MOOD.

Simple Form.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
	Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Com.
3d p. ተበር፡ { he being hon.	ከበር፡	ከበር፡	she being honourable.	ከበርዎ፡ they
2. ተበርሁ፡	ከበርኩ፡	thou being honourable		ከበርኩሁ፡ you
.. hon. 1.	ከበርወ፡	you be-		ከበርኩቸ፡ we
... 2.	ከበርኩሁ፡	{ ing hon.		
1.	ከበር፡	I being hon.		

The Augmented form has become Finite by the Auxiliary እለ፡ being attached to the Simple form; but not in the same manner as it attaches itself to the Contingent, in constituting the Present and Future Tense. It serves for the Past and the Present Tenses.

β. SECOND OR AUGMENTED FORM OF THE CONSTRUCTIVE MOOD.

Constructive Aorist (Present and Perfect).

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Com.	Com.
3. ካ-በርቃል፡ { he is |( was) hon. }	ካ-በረለች፡ she is (was) hon.		ካ-በርቃል፡ they
2. ካ-በረሱል፡ ካ-በረሱል፡ thou art (wast) hon.			ካ-በረሱች፡ you
... hon. 1.	ካ-በርቃል፡ { you were }		
... 2.	ካ-በረሱች፡ { hon. }		
1.	{ ካ-በርቃለሁ፡ for ካ-በረሱ፡ & ስለሁ፡ I am (was) h. }		ካ-በርቃለሁ፡ we

are, or were honourable.

γ. COMPOUND CONSTRUCTIVE FORMS.

N Constructive Perfect.

SINGULAR.		
Masc.	Fem.	
3. { ካ-በረ፡ { he was, or had been hon. } }	{ ካ-በረ፡ { she was, or had been hon. } }	
2. { ካ-በረሁ፡ { thou wast, hadst been hon. } }	{ ካ-በረሁ፡ { thou wast, hadst been hon. } }	
.. hon. 1.	ካ-በረው፡ ንበረ፡ { you were, had been }	
... 2.	ካ-በረሱሁ፡ ንበረሱሁ፡ { hon. }	
1.	ካ-በረ፡ ንበረሁ፡ I was, had been h.	

PLURAL.		
Common.		
3d pers. ካ-በረው፡ ንበረ፡ they		
2d ... ካ-በረሱሁ፡ ንበረሱሁ፡ you		were, or had been honourable,
1st ... ካ-በረኑ፡ ንበረኑ፡ we		

This form is used merely for the Indicative. Observe, also, that ንበረ፡ may be used throughout, without any change, as remarked in the Note to the conjugation of ንበረ፡ p. 65.

2. Constructive Form of Uncertainty.

SINGULAR.
3d masc. ՚ԻՌԸ : ՔՄՔՃ : he may
.. fem. ՚ԻՌՀ : ՚ԴՄՔՃՔ : she may
2d masc. ՚ԻՌՃՅ : ՚ԴՄՔՃՅ : } thou mayest
.. fem. ՚ԻՌՃՈՒ : ՚ԴՄՔՃՈՒ : } probably be honourable.
.. hon.1. ՚ԻՌՃՓ : ՔՄՔՃ : } thou may
.. .. 2. ՚ԻՌՃՔՄ : ՚ԴՄՔՃՔՄ : } you may
1st com. ՚ԻՌՀ : ՆՄՔՃԱՄ : I may
PLURAL.
3d masc. ՚ԻՌՃՓ : ՔՄՔՃ : they
2d .. ՚ԻՌՃՔՄ : ՚ԴՄՔՃՔՄ : you } may be honourable.
1st com. ՚ԻՌՃՅ : ՆՅՐՔՃՅ : we

(e) *Imperative.*

The Imperative has two forms; one which has the first Radical in the sixth, and the second in the first order; and another which has the first Radical in the first, and the second in the sixth order. All those verbs which have the Subjunctive form, have the Imperative in the first; and the rest have it in the second form. As a specimen of the first, we take the Imperative of **תְּבַקֵּשׁ**; and of the other, that of **תְּמַפֵּחַ**: It is used only in the Second Person Singular and Plural.

a. Form 5UK1:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Masc. ଶୁଦ୍ଧ: } be honourable.	Com. ଶୁଦ୍ଧା: be honourable.
Fem. ଶୁଦ୍ଧା: }	
Diphthong form: ଫୁଟ୍ରା: ଫୁଟ୍ରାଃ sing. ଫୁଟ୍ରାଃ pl. "count."	

β. Form UUKJ:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Masc. מִנְחָה : { do thou observe.	Com. מִנְחָה : do you observe.
Fem. מִנְחָה : {	

(f) *Infinitive Mood.*

Is formed by prefixing **συ-** to the Simple root; and it presents the two forms: **συγχωρεῖ**: "to be honourable;" and **συτηθεῖ**: "to observe." With Prima Rad. Diphthong: **συφ-τηλεῖ**: "to number." **συφ-δέλεῖ**: "to till," "dig."

(g) *Participles.*

a. Simple: *act.* ክፍኑ: one who is honoured.

pass. Τυγχανοῦσα: any thing dipped.

Eth. pass. **ହୁଏ**: honoured.

β. Compound Part., Adjective, or Relative Participle.

N For the Preterite—Is formed by prefixing the Relative Pronoun **Պ:** to the Preterite.

SINGULAR.

- 3. masc. **ԲՌՈՇ:** he } who was
- .. fem. **ԲՌՈՇՖ:** she } hon.
- 2. masc. **ԲՌՈԾՎ:** } thou who
- .. fem. **ԲՌՈԾՋԻ:** } wast hon.
- .. hon. 1. **ԲՌՈՇ:** } you who
- 2. **ԲՌՈՇՖԱ-Մ:** } were hon.
- 1. com. **ԲՌՈԾՄ:** I who was hon.

PLURAL.

- 3. **ԲՌՈՇ:** they who were hon.
- 2. **ԲՌՈՇՖԱ-Մ:** you who were hon.
- 1. **ԲՌՈԾ:** we who were hon.

Ա For the Present—Is formed by prefixing the Relative Pronoun **ԲԳԱ-**: to the forms of the Contingent Mood.

SINGULAR.

- 3. masc. **ԲՏԳԻ-ՌԸ:** he } who is
- .. fem. **ԲՏԳԻ-ՌԸ:** she } hon.
- 2. masc. **ԲՏԳԻ-ՌԸ:** } thou who
- .. fem. **ԲՏԳԻ-ՌԸ:** } art hon.
- .. hon. 1. **ԲՏԳԻ-ՌԸ:** } you who
- 2. **ԲՏԳԻ-ՌԸ:** } are hon.
- 1. com. **ԲՏԳԻ-ՌԸ:** I who am hon.

PLURAL.

- 3. **ԲՏԳԻ-ՌԸ:** they who are hon.
- 2. **ԲՏԳԻ-ՌԸ:** you who are hon.
- 1. **ԲՏԳԻ-ՌԸ:** we who are hon.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The Simple Participial forms are used in their verbal as well as in a nominal character. This is evident in Active Verbs; e.g. **ԹՐՓ:** “observing,” “watching,” “guarding”; and “guardian,” “observer”: which may have its object connected with it either in the Genitive Case, when it is considered as a Noun, e.g. **ԹՈՂ:** **ԹՐՓ:** “a keeper, guardian, of sheep,” “shepherd”; or in the Accusative Case, **ԹԵՂ:** **ԹՐՓ:** “one keeping, watching the sheep.” The Passive forms are resolvable by the two compound forms (**N**) and (**Ա**) of the Passive Conjugations.

2. The two compound forms of the Relative or Adjective Participle evince their Participial character (which consists in partaking—*partiendo*—of the properties of the Verb as well as of the Noun, and forming a connecting link between both) by the position in which they stand when connected with Nouns, as Adjectives; by the treatment they experience from other Transitive Verbs, when being put into the Accusative Case; and by the influence they themselves exercise on Nouns and Pronouns. As this subject, however, belongs more properly to the Syntax, we shall leave it for the present.

Before we leave this subject, we beg to present to the Student those regular deviations which take place in those verbs whose third radical letter is liable to change, by the accession of the vowels ī and ē, according to the rule laid down Part I. Ch. VII. c. This occurs in verbs ending in Α: Ζ: Ο: Τ: Ι: Η: Ρ: Μ: Χ: and Θ:, with (1) the Feminine of the 2d pers. masc. in (a) the Present Indicative; (b) the Contingent Simple and Compound; (c) Subjunctive; (d) Imperative; (2) with the 1st pers. sing. in the Constructive Simple and its Compounds. Instances:

1. **ΑΤΛ:** "He span."

FOR

ΤΑΤΡΛΗ:	thou (<i>fem.</i>) spinnest . . .	ΤΑΤΔΡΛΗ::
ΤΑΤΡΛ:	. . . . .	ΤΑΤΛ:
ΤΑΤΡΛ: ΙΠΩΠ:	thou (<i>f.</i>) wast spinning, ΤΑΤΛ: ΙΠΩΠ:	
ΤΑΤΡΛ: ΤΣΞΛΗ:	thou (<i>f.</i>) wilt be spinning, ΤΑΤΛ: ΤΣΞ: ΚΛΗ:	
ΑΤΡΛ: do thou (<i>f.</i>) spin	ΑΤΛ:	
ΤΕΤΡΛ: thou (<i>f.</i>) shalt, mayest thou spin, ΤΕΤΛ:		
ΑΤΡΛ: I spinning	ΑΤΛ:	
ΑΤΡΛΗ: I spin, span	ΑΤΛ: ΚΛΗ:	
ΑΤΡΛ: ΙΠΩΠ: I was spinning	ΑΤΛ: ΙΠΩΠ:	
ΑΤΡΛ: ΚΜΞΛΗ: { I shall (may probably) be spinning }	ΑΤΛ: ΚΜΞΛΗ:	

2. **ΗΛΩ:** "He was king" (queen).ΜΙΛΗ: "He returned." (*act.*)

ΤΖΓΗΛΗ:	thou art queen	ΤΖΓΨ: ΚΛΗ:
ΤΖΓΗ:	. . . . .	ΤΖΓΨ:
ΤΜΔΛΗ: ΙΠΩΠ:	thou was returning, ΤΜΔΛΗ: ΙΠΩΠ:	ΤΜΔΛΗ: ΤΣΞΛΗ::
ΤΜΔΛΗ: ΤΣΞΛΗ: { thou wilt be returning }		ΤΜΔΛΗ: ΤΣΞΛΗ::
ΤΖΓΗ: mayest thou reign as Queen	ΤΖΓΨ:	
ΖΛΗ: be queen	ΖΛΨ:	
ΜΙΛΗ:	ΜΙΛΗ:	
ΜΙΛΗΛΗ: & ΜΙΛΗΡΛΗ: ΜΙΛΗ: { ΙΠΩΠ: ΜΙΛΗ: ΙΠΩΠ: } { ΜΙΛΗΡΛΗ: ΜΙΛΗ: ΙΠΩΠ: } { ΜΙΛΗΛΗ: ΜΙΛΗ: ΙΠΩΠ: }		

3. **ΗΔΤ:** "He opened."

ΤΗΔΕΤΛΗ:	thou openest	ΤΗΔΕΤΡΛΗ:
ΤΗΔΕΤ:	. . . . .	ΤΗΔΕΤ:

	FOR	
ትኩሩች፡ ንበሽ፡; thou wast opening	ትኩሩታ፡ ንበሽ፡	
ትኩሩች፡ ተሆኝለሽ፡ { thou wilt be }	ትኩሩታ፡ ተሆኝለሽ፡	
ትኩሩች፡ mayest thou open	ትኩሩታ፡	
ክሩች፡ do thou open	ክሩታ፡	
ነሩች፡ I opening	ነሩታ፡	
ነሩቋለሁ፡ I open	ነሩቋለሁ፡	
ነሩች፡ ንበሆ፡ & ተሩች፡ እሆቋለሁ፡	ነሩች፡ እሆቋለሁ፡ & ተሩች፡	
	ንበሆ፡፡	

4. ለሙቅ፡ “He begged.”

ትላዋቃቋለሽ፡ thou beggest	ትላዋቃቋለሽ፡
ትላዋቃ፡ &c.	ትላዋቃ፡
ለዋጭ፡ do thou beg	ለዋጭ፡
ለዋጭ፡ I begging	ለዋጭ፡
ለዋጭቋለሁ፡ I am (was) begging . . .	ለዋጭቋለሁ፡፡

5. መረጃ፡ “He poisoned.”

ትመርካጥለሽ፡ thou poisonest	ትመርካጥለሽ፡
ትመርካ፡ &c.	ትመርካ፡
መርካ፡ and መርካ፡ do thou poison,	መርካ፡
መርካ፡ I poisoning	መርካ፡
መርካጥለሁ፡ I poison (poisoned) . . .	መርካጥለሁ፡

6. ወረዳ፡ “He descended.”

ትወረደቋለሽ፡ thou descendest	ትወረደቋለሽ፡
ትወረደ፡ &c.	ትወረደ፡
ትወረደ፡ mayest thou descend	ትወረደ፡
ወረዳ፡ do thou descend	ወረዳ፡
ወረዳ፡ &c., I descending	ወረዳ፡
ወረዳቋለሁ፡ I was, am descending . . .	ወረዳቋለሁ፡

7. ወገበ፡ “he pounded.”

ትወገበቋለሽ፡ thou poundest	ትወገበቋለሽ፡
ትወገበ፡ &c.	ትወገበ፡፡
ትወገበ፡ mayest thou pound	ትወገበ፡
ወገበ፡ do thou pound	ወገበ፡

Φημ: I pounding &c. **Φημ:**

Φημαλυ: I am (was) pounding . . . **Φητυλυ::**

8. **Γωχ:** "he reproved," "chastised." **ωχθ:** "he proceeded." The changes are the same as in No. 7.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

whose characteristic is a prolongation of the first radical, by which it is changed from the first into the fourth form. Its force is intensity of the idea of the original form.

τρυπ: he scolded exceedingly.

Its difference in form, from the First Conjugation, is as follows:

1. It retains the first long radical throughout; on this account, it
2. Has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive, but is served by the Contingent Mood.
3. In the Imperative, the first radical is long, of the fourth: the second short, of the sixth order.
4. In the Infinitive, the first radical is of the fourth; the second, as in all the conjugations, of the first order.

The mode of conjugating being the same as in the first species, we shall give only the Third Person, Singular and Plural, in those Moods and Tenses which have it.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers.	SINGULAR.	3d pers.	PLURAL.
τρυπ: he scolded exceedingly &c.		τρυπ: they scolded exceedingly &c.	

Present and Future.

εργηπα: {	he scolds exceedingly &c.	εργηπα: {	they scold exceed- ingly &c.
------------------	------------------------------	------------------	---------------------------------

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

εργηπ:	εργηπ:
---------------	---------------

Compound Preterite.

εργηπ: ηπε: {	he scolded, had scolded, was scold- ing, would scold, would have scold- ed exceedingly.	εργηπ: ηπε:::	he scolded, &c.
----------------------	---	----------------------	-----------------

Compound of Uncertainty.

εργηπ: } he may (perhaps) scold	εργηπ: ευεπ::
ευεπ: } exceedingly &c.	

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ՌՃՌ: he, scolding exceedingly &c. | **ՌՃՌՈՓ:** they scolding &c.

Augmented Present and Perfect (Aorist).

ՌՃՌՈՓՃ: { he scolds (scolded) | **ՌՃՌՈՓՃ:** they scold, &c.
 exceedingly, &c. |

Comp. Preterite.

ՌՃՌ: ՆՈՀ: { he scolded, was cold— | **ՌՃՌՈՓ: ՆՈՀ:** they scolded, &c.
 ing exceedingly, &c. |

Comp. of Uncertainty.

ՌՃՌ: ՔՄԳՃ: he may (perhaps) scold exceedingly, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ՌՃՌՈ:** } do thou scold. | **ՌՃՌՈ:** { do you scold exceedingly,
Fem. **ՌՃՌՈ:** } &c.

6. INFINITIVE.

ԾԱՌՃՈ: to scold, the scolding.

7. PARTICIPLES.

1. *Nominascens.*—**ՌՃՈ:** “a scolder,” “one who scolds exceedingly.”

2. *Adject.*—**ՔՄԳՌՃՈ:** &c. “one who scolds exceedingly,” &c.

Of course, there is no Passive Participle of this form.

c. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Active and Transitive Voice.—The characteristic is an **Հ**: prefixed to the radix; which puts the Personal Preformatives, excepting **Հ**:, into the fourth order.

Form ՀՈԽԾ: “he honoured.”

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ՀՈԽԾ: he honoured, &c. as **ԽՈԽԾ:** | **ՀՈԽԾԴ:** they honoured, &c.

Present and Future.

ՔՈԽԾՃ: he honours.

| **ՔՈԽԾՃԸ:** they honour, &c.

ՔՈԽԾՃԸՒ: she honours, &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

ՔՈԽԾԸ: **ՔՈԽԾԸ:** &c. &c.

| **ՔՈԽԾԸ:** &c.

SINGULAR.	<i>Compound Preterite.</i>	PLURAL.
ያዝ-በር: ኋደ: &c.	| ያዝ-በር: ኋደ: &c.	
<i>Compound of Uncertainty.</i>		
ያዝ-በር: ለሁፍል: he may (perhaps) honour, &c.		
3. SUBJUNCTIVE.		
ያዝ-በር: may he (let him) honour, &c. as ይችበር: &c.		
4. CONSTRUCTIVE. <i>Simple.</i>		
አዝ-በር: he honouring.	| አዝ-በርዎ: they honouring.	
አዝ-በር: she honouring.		
አዝ-በርዎ: } thou honouring.	| አዝ-በርቻብ: you honouring.	
አዝ-በርዎ: } you honouring.		
አዝ-በርቻብ: } you honouring.		
አዝ-በር: I honouring.	| አዝ-በርኗ: we honouring.	
<i>Augmented Present and Preterite.</i>		
አዝ-በርዋል: { he honours (honoured) &c.	| አዝ-በርዋል: { they honour (honoured) &c.	
Compound Preterite.		
አዝ-በር: ኋደ: he honoured, &c. | አዝ-በርዎ: ኋደ: they honoured, &c.		
SINGULAR.	5. IMPERATIVE.	PLURAL.
Masc. አዝ-በር: } do thou honour.		አዝ-በር: do ye honour.
Fem. አዝ-በር: }		
6. INFINITIVE.		
ማዝ-በር: to honour, the honouring.		
7. PARTICIPLES.		
1. <i>Nominal</i> , አዝ-ባ: the honourer, one who honours.		
2. <i>Adject.</i> { የሙያ-ያዝ-በር: he who honours.		
	ያዝ-በር: he who honoured.	

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.**ተስፈጻሚ:** "he was reviled."

Its nature is pre-eminently *Passive* (objective), and reflective. Its characteristic is the Preformative **ተ**: to the original form in the Preterite, Constructive, and Imperative, which, in the same manner as in the cognate languages, gives way to the other Preformatives in the process of conjugations. The second radical remains unchanged in all the moods, tenses, and persons, except in the Constructive Moods. So does also the first radical in the Infinitive Mood. These two remarks serve to distinguish this and the other Passive Conjugations from the rest.

I. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d pers. masc. **ተስፋበ፡-** he was reviled. | **ተስፋበ፡-** they were reviled,
&c. &c., the same as **ከበረ፡-** &c.

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d pers. masc. ይስፋበል፡-	{ he is (will be) reviled.	3d p. c. ይስፋበል፡-	{ they are (will be) reviled.
.... fem. ቻስፋበለች፡-	{ she is (will be) reviled.		
2d per. masc. ቻስፋበለሁ፡-	{ thou art (wilt be)	ቻስፋበለችሁ፡-	{ you are (will be)
.... fem. ቻስፋበያለሽ፡-			
.... hon. 1. ይስፋበር፡-	{ you are (will be)		
.... 2. ቻስፋበየችሁ፡-			
1st ... com. እስፋበለሁ፡-	I am (shall be)	እንስፋበለች፡-	{ we are (shall be)

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d per. masc. ይስፋብ፡-	fem. ቻስፋብ፡-
2d ...	ቻስፋብ፡- fem. ቻስፋብ፡-
... ... hon. 1. ይስፋብ፡-	2. ቻስፋብ፡-
1st ... com. እስፋብ፡-	

ይስፋብ፡-**ቻስፋብ፡-****እንስፋብ፡-***Compound Preterite.*

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

ይስፋብ፡ ንበረ፡- he was (would be), had been (would have been), reviled,
&c. &c.

PLURAL.

ይስፋብ፡ ንበረ፡- they were (would be), had been (would have been),
reviled, &c. &c.

Compound of Uncertainty.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d pers. masc. ይስፋብ፡ ይህቻል፡-	{ he may (per- haps) be re- viled, &c. &c.	ይስፋብ፡ ይህቻል፡- { they may (per- haps) be re- viled, &c. &c.
------------------------------------	--	--

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	<i>Simple.</i>	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. תָּמַדְרָה: he being reviled.		תָּמַדְרָוָה: they being
... fem. תָּמַדְרָה: she being reviled.		תָּמַדְרָנְתָּם: you being
2d ... masc. תָּמַדְרָעָה: thou being re-		
.... fem. תָּמַדְרָנָה: viled.		
.... hon. 1. תָּמַדְרָוָה: {you being		
.... . . . 2. תָּמַדְרָנְתָּם: } reviled.		
1st.. com. תָּמַדְרָה: I being reviled.		תָּמַדְרָנוֹת: we being

Augmented Aorist.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. m. תָּמַדְרָוָה: he { is	תָּמַדְרָוָה: they
... f. תָּמַדְרָנְתָּם: she } (was)	
2d .. m. תָּמַדְרָעָה: } thou art	תָּמַדְרָנְתָּם: you
.... f. תָּמַדְרָנְתָּם: } (wast)	
.... hon. 1. תָּמַדְרָוָה: {you are	
.... . . . 2. תָּמַדְרָנְתָּם: } (were)	are (were) reviled.
1st.. com. תָּמַדְרָוָה: {I am	תָּמַדְרָוָה: we
..... (was)	

SINGULAR. Compound Preterite.

PLURAL.

3d p. m. תָּמַדְרָה: { he was (had	תָּמַדְרָוָה: } they were (had been)
..... נִזְבָּה: { been) reviled,	
..... &c. &c. &c.	נִזְבָּה: } reviled, &c. &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. תָּמַדְרָה: { do thou be (sub-	תָּמַדְרָה: { do you be (submit to
..... mit to being) re-	..... being) reviled.

6. INFINITIVE.

טוֹמֵדָה: to be reviled, the being reviled.

7. PARTICIPLES.

(a) *Nominal*, **תָּמַדְרָה:** one who is reviled.

(b) *Relative*, a. *Perf.* **מִתָּמַדְרָה:** he who was (has been) reviled.

β. *Pres.* **מַמְדָּרָה:** he who is reviled.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

አፍነድ: He made (caused to) speak.

The nature of this verb is doubly transitive, or *causative*. It combines the characteristics of both the second and the third conjugations; the prolongation of the first radical giving intensity to the transitively (by **አ**:) augmented form.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc.	አፍነድ:	he made	to speak	አፍነድ: they made
... fem.	አፍነድች:	she made		
2d .. masc.	አፍነዥ:	thou madest	to speak	አፍነዥች: you made
... fem.	አፍነዥቻ:			
... hon. 1.	አፍነድ:		to speak	አፍነድ: we made
... ... 2.	አፍነድችሁ:	you made		
1st.. com.	አፍነዥ:	I made		

Present and Future.

3d p. masc.	የፍኑል:	he makes	to speak	የፍኑልያ: they
... fem.	ተፍኑልለች:	she (will make)		
2d .. masc.	ተፍኑልለሁ:	thou makest	to speak	ተፍኑልለችሁ: you
... fem.	ተፍኑልለቻ:	(will make)		
... hon. 1.	የፍኑል:	you make	to speak	የፍኑልለሁ: (will make)
... ... 2.	ተፍኑልለችሁ:	(will make)		
1st.. com.	አፍኑልሁ:	I make (shall make)		አፍኑልለሁ: we

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

3d pers.	የፍና:	fem. ተፍና:	የፍና:	የፍና:
2d ..	ተፍና:	fem. ተፍና:		
... hon. 1.	የፍና:	2. ተፍና:	የፍና:	የፍና:
1.	አፍና:			

Compound Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d pers. masc.	የፍናበት:	he made (would make), had made (would have made) to speak, &c.	የፍናበት:	የፍናበት: they made &c. to speak &c.

Compound of Uncertainty.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	የቻር፡ ይህተል፡ { he may (per- haps) make to speak, &c.	የቻር፡ ይህተል፡ { they may (per- haps) make to speak, &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d p. masc.	አፍገር፡ he	making to speak	አፍገዱ፡ they
... fem.	አፍገሪ፡ she		አፍገሪዱ፡ you
2d ... masc.	አፍገሩ፡ } thou		making to speak,
... fem.	አፍገሩ፡ } thou		
... hon. 1.	አፍገዱ፡ } you		
... 2.	አፍገሩዱ፡ } you		
1st ... com.	አፍገሩ፡ I		አፍገሩ፡ we

Compound Aorist.

3d pers. masc.	አፍገዋል፡ { he makes (made) to speak, &c.	አፍገዱዋል፡ { they make (made) to speak, &c.
----------------	--	--

Compound Preterite.

አፍገር፡ ንበት፡ { he made (had made) to speak, &c.	አፍገዱ፡ { they made (had made) to speak, &c.
---	--

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አፍገር፡ { do thou make to	አፍገሩ፡ do ye make to speak.
Fem. አፍገሪ፡ { speak.	

6. INFINITIVE.

ማቅረብ፡ to make or cause to speak; the causing to speak.

7. PARTICIPLES.

(a) *Simple*, **አፍገሩ፡** one who makes to speak.

(b) *Relative*,

a. *Perfect*, **የቻር፡** he who made to speak, &c.

b. *Present*, **ሁጠና የቻር፡** he who makes to speak, &c.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

ተቻር፡ "He spoke."

The nature and force of this species is intensity, continuation, sometimes reciprocity, either of the original, or of the Fourth Conjugation. It

combines the properties of the Second (long first radical) and Fourth (Pre-formative **ת**:) Conjugations. The **ת**: is found in the Preterite, Imperative, and Constructive Moods: the first radical is long throughout: the second is of the first order, in all moods, tenses, and persons, except in the Constructive.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

תִּלְכָה: he spoke, &c.

PLURAL.

תִּלְכָהוּ: they spoke, &c.*Present and Future.*

תִּלְכָה: he speaks (will speak) &c. | **תִּלְכָהוּ**: { they speak (will speak) &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d pers. masc.

Simple.

תִּלְכָה: fem. **תִּלְכָה**: &c.| **תִּלְכָהוּ**: &c. &c.*Compound Preterite.***תִּלְכָה**: **נִכְחָה**: he spoke &c.| **תִּלְכָהוּ**: **נִכְחָהוּ**: they spoke &c.*Compound of Uncertainty.*

תִּלְכָה: **לֻמְדָה**: { he may (per-
haps) speak &c. | **תִּלְכָה**: **לֻמְדָהוּ**: { they may (per-
haps) speak &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.

Simple.

תִּלְכָה: he speaking &c.| **תִּלְכָהוּ**: they speaking &c.*Compound Aorist.***תִּלְכָהוּ**: he speaks or spoke &c. | **תִּלְכָהוּ**: they speak or spoke &c.*Compound Preterite.*

תִּלְכָה: **נִכְחָה**: { he spoke (had
spoken), &c. | **תִּלְכָהוּ**: **נִכְחָהוּ**: { they spoke (had
spoken), &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **תִּלְכָה**: } do thou speak.

| **תִּלְכָה**: do ye speak.

6. INFINITIVE.

סֹבֵרַת: to speak, the speaking.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple; **תִּלְכָה**: a speaker, speaking.

Relative (a) Perfect, **פִּתְלִיכָה**: he who spoke.

(b) Present, **פֹּוֶתְלִיכָה**: he who speaks.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ԴՅՈՓԻՇ**: one who tries.

Relative (a) *Perfect*, **ՔԴՅՈՓԻՇ**: he who tried, &c.

(b) *Present*, **ԲԱՂՅՈՓԻՇ**: he who tries, &c.

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

ՀՈՒԽՈՇ: He caused to honour, caused to be honoured.

This is the most frequent form for the causative voice. Its characteristic is the prefixion of the two letters ՀՈ: to the original form, with which it has nearly the same mode of conjugation. The second radical is, in the Contingent and all other forms derived from it, put into the sixth order. But it has no Subjunctive form. The Imperative has the Contingent form of the radicals. The Infinitive has the first and second radicals in the first order. The Personal Preformatives are put before the ՀՈ: absorbing the Հ::

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

ՀՈՒԽՈՇ: he caused to be hon. &c. | **ՀՈՒԽՈՇ**: { they caused to be
honoured, &c.

3d pers.

PLURAL.

Present and Future.

3d p. masc. **ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՉՈՇ**: he causes &c.

... ... fem. **ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՉՈՂ-ՂԵՔ**: she causes &c.

2d masc. **ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՉՈՂ-ՂԵՍ**: } thou causest &c.

... ... fem. **ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՉՈՂ-ՂԵՐԱՂԵՔ**: }

... ... hon. 1. **ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՉՈՂ-ՂԵՐ**: }

... ... 2. **ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՉՈՂ-ՂԵՐ-ՂԵՍ**: } you cause &c.

1st.. com. **ՀՈՒԽ-ՈՉՈՂ-ՂԵՄ**: I cause &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

Simple.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՉ**: fem. **ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՉ**:

2d **ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՉ**: fem. **ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՉ**:

... ... hon. 1. **ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՉ**: 2d **ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՉ**:

1st.. **ՀՈՒԽ-ՈՉ**:

PLURAL.

ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՇ:

ՔՈՒԽ-ՈՇ:

ՆՔՈՒԽ-ՈՉ:

3d pers. masc.

Compound Preterite.

ՔՈՒԽ-ՈԾ: } he caused, &c. to be | **ՔՈՒԽ-ՈԾ**: } they caused, &c. to be
ՀՈՇ: } honoured, &c. | **ՀՈՇ**: } honoured, &c.

Compound of Probability.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

ያስተካርድ: { he (probably) may
ያወጥል: } cause to be hon. &c.

PLURAL.

ያስተካርና: { they (probably) may
ያወጥና: } cause to be hon. &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.

Simple.

አስተካርድ: { he causing to be ho-
 noured, &c. | **አስተካርኝው:** { they causing to be
 honoured, &c.

Compound Aorist.

አስተካርዋል: { he causes (caused)
 to be hon. &c. | **አስተካርኝዋል:** { they cause (caused)
 to be hon. &c.

Compound Preterite.

አስተካርድ: { he caused (had caused)
ንበረ: { to be honoured, &c. | **አስተካርኝው:** { they caused (had
ንበረ: { caused) to be ho-
 noured, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አስተካርድ:** do thou cause to | **አስተካርና:** do ye cause to be hon.
 Fem. **አስተካርና:** be honoured.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማስተካርድ: to cause to be honoured, the causing to be honoured, the
 procuring honour.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple,

አስተካር: one who causes to be honoured.

Relative,

(a) *Pret.* **ያስተካር:** he who caused &c.(b) *Pres.* **ያመቁያስተካርድ:** he who causes to be honoured, &c.

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

አስመጥል: He caused to resemble ; he flattered, dissimulated.

The difference of this conjugation from the preceding is so slight, that we do not find it necessary to give its flexion: it consists merely in the second radical being constantly long, except in the Constructive: in all the rest it is similar to the preceding **አስተካርድ:** As to the third radical **ለ:** we refer to the deviations marked under the First Conjugation, No. 1. This conjugation, by the way, is very rare.

J. TENTH CONJUGATION.

ՀՈՒԴՈՒ: He made to speak.

The force of this conjugation is Causative, as the two preceding ones. The difference consists in the form being augmented by three letters, ԱՌԻ: instead of the two ԱՌ::

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ՀՈՒԴՈՒ: he made to speak, &c. | **ՀՈՒԴՈՒ**: they made to speak, &c.

Present and Future.

ՔՈՒԴՈՒԾ: { he makes &c. to speak, &c., | **ՔՈՒԴՈՒԾ**: { they make &c. to speak, &c.,

2. CONTINGENT.

3d pers. masc.

Simple.

ՔՈՒԴՈՒԸ: &c.

| **ՔՈՒԴՈՒԾ**: &c.

Compound Preterite.

ՔՈՒԴՈՒԾ: ՆՈՒ: &c. { he made &c. to speak, &c., | **ՔՈՒԴՈՒԾ: ՆՈՒ**: { they made &c. to speak, &c.,

Compound of Probability.

ՔՈՒԴՈՒԸ: { he may probably make to speak, &c., | **ՔՈՒԴՈՒԾ**: { they may probably cause to speak, &c.,

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.

Simple.

ՀՈՒԴՈՒԾ: he causing to speak, &c. | **ՀՈՒԴՈՒԾՈՒ**: they causing to speak, &c.

Compound Aorist.

ՀՈՒԴՈՒԾՓ: { he causes (caused) to speak, &c., | **ՀՈՒԴՈՒԾՓՈՒ**: { they cause (caused) to speak, &c.,

Compound Preterite.

ՀՈՒԴՈՒԾ: ՆՈՒ: { he caused &c. to speak, &c., | **ՀՈՒԴՈՒԾՈՒ**: { they caused &c. to speak, &c.,

3d pers. masc.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ՔՈՒԴՈՒԸ: { may he cause to speak, &c. the same as | **ՔՈՒԴՈՒԾ**: { may they cause to speak, &c.,

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ՀՈՒԴՈՒԸ**: { do thou make | **ՀՈՒԴՈՒԾ**: do you make to speak.
Fem. **ՀՈՒԴՈՒԾ**: { to speak.

6. INFINITIVE.

טַבְרִתְנִילָךְ: to cause (the causing) to speak.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **לֹבֶתְנִילָךְ**: one who causes to speak.

Relative Perfect, **לֹבֶתְנִילָךְ**: he who caused to speak.

Present, **פָּסַע לֹבֶתְנִילָךְ**: he who causes to speak.

K. ELEVENTH CONJUGATION.

תַּפְפְּצָה: He was entirely humbled; humbled himself entirely.

The force of this conjugation is intensity added to forms D and F: its characteristic is reduplication of the prolonged first radical with the objective תְ: prefixed. As its conjugation is the same as **תְּפֵגָה**: we abstain from detailing it.

L. TWELFTH CONJUGATION.

לִמְפָאָה: Broke to pieces.

The force of this conjugation is intense action, represented by a reduplication of the second radical.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

לִמְפָאָה: he broke to pieces, &c. | **לִמְפָאָה**: they broke to pieces, &c.

Present and Future.

לִמְפָאָה-אָה: { he breaks, &c. to pieces, &c. | **לִמְפָאָה-אָה**: { they break, &c. to pieces, &c.

3d pers. masc.

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

לִמְפָאָה: &c.

| **לִמְפָאָה**: &c.

Compound Preterite.

לִמְפָאָה: נִפְאָה: { he broke, &c. to pieces, &c. | **לִמְפָאָה: נִפְאָה**: { they broke, &c. to pieces, &c.

Compound of Probability.

לִמְפָאָה: שֻׁפְאָה: { he may probably break to pieces, &c. | **לִמְפָאָה**: { they may probably break to pieces, &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. m. ደስጥብር: may he	ይስጥብር: may they
... f. ቴስጥብር: may she	
2d p. m. ቴስጥብር: } mayest thou	ቴስጥብር: may you } break
... f. ቴስጥብር: }	
... hon. 1. ደስጥብር: may you	
... hon. 2. ቴስጥብር: }	
1st . . . እስጥብር: may I	እንስጥብር: may we } to pieces.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d pers. masc. ስም-ብር: he breaking to pieces, &c. | ስም-ብርዎ: { they breaking to pieces, &c.

Compound Aorist.

ስም-ብርቃል: { he breaks (broke) to pieces, &c. | ስም-ብርቃል: { they break (broke) to pieces, &c.

Compound Preterite.

ስም-ብር: ንብረ: { he broke, &c. to pieces, &c. | ስም-ብርዎ: ንብረ: { they broke &c. to pieces, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ስም-ብር: } do thou break to pieces, &c. | ስም-ብር: do ye break to pieces, &c.

6. INFINITIVE.

መስም-ብር: to break to pieces.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple., ስም-ብር: one who breaks to pieces.*Rel. Pret.* የስም-ብር: he that broke to pieces.*Pres.* የሱም-ስም-ብር: he that breaks to pieces.

M. THIRTEENTH CONJUGATION.

አዲራን: He performed great works.

The force of this conjugation is an addition of intensity to the Third Conjugation: this is represented by a reduplication and prolongation of the second radical, with the Preformative እ:::

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR. PLURAL.

አዲራን: { he performed great works, &c.	አዲራን: { they performed great works, &c.
---------------------------------------	---

SINGULAR.	<i>Present and Future.</i>	PLURAL.
3d pers. masc. የቻርጋል: { he performs, &c. great works, &c.	የቻርጋለ: { they perform great works, &c.	
	2. CONTINGENT. <i>Simple.</i>	
የቻርጋ: &c.		የቻርጋት: &c.
		<i>Compound Preterite.</i>
የቻርጋ፡ ንበ፡: { he performed &c. great works, &c.		የቻርጋ፡ ንበ፡: { they performed &c. great works, &c.
		<i>Compound of Probability.</i>
የቻርጋ፡: { he may probably per- ለህፍል፡: { form great works.		የቻርጋ፡: { they may probably perform great works, &c.
		3. SUBJUNCTIVE.
የቻርጋ፡: { may he perform great works, &c.		የቻርጋ፡: { may they perform great works, &c.
		4. CONSTRUCTIVE.
	<i>Simple.</i>	
አያርጋ፡: { he performing great works.		አያርጋዎ፡: { they performing great works, &c.
		<i>Compound Aorist.</i>
አያርጋል፡: { he performs (per- formed) great works &c.		አያርጋዎል፡: { they perform (per- formed) great works, &c.
		<i>Compound Preterite.</i>
አያርጋ፡ ንበ፡: { he performed, &c. great works &c.		አያርጋዎ፡ ንበ፡: { they performed, &c. great works, &c.
		5. IMPERATIVE.
Masc. አያርጋ፡: { do thou perform		
Fem. አያርጋ፡: { great works.		አያርጋ፡: { do ye perform great works.
		6. INFINITIVE.
ሙያርጋ፡: to perform (the performance of) great works.		
		7. PARTICIPLES.
<i>Simple.</i> አያርጋ፡: one who performs great works.		
<i>Rel. Perf.</i> የያርጋ፡: he who performed great works.		
<i>Pres.</i> የሙያርጋ፡: he who performs great works.		

N. FOURTEENTH CONJUGATION.

תְּמַלְּחָק: He counselled with others, gave and took advice, advised frequently.

תְּמַלְּחָה: He went and returned, went to and fro, i.e. walked.

The force of this conjugation is double intensity, reciprocity, and repetition of the action expressed in the verb. This is represented by reduplication and prolongation of the second radical. Its flexion and conjugation is quite the same as in the Sixth Conjugation.

O. FIFTEENTH CONJUGATION.

תְּפִגְגָּח: He conversed with another, spoke frequently.

The nature of this conjugation is the same as the preceding; and as to form, it differs only in having the first radical long, in conformity with the sixth species, which it resembles entirely in flexion and conjugation.

P. Q. R. S. SIXTEENTH, SEVENTEENTH, EIGHTEENTH, & NINETEENTH CONJUGATIONS.

גִּיחָה: "To be stiff," "obdurate." *Intransitive.*

אֲגִיחָה: "To stiffen." *Transitive.*

תְּמַלְּחָה: "He returned," "was returned." *Passive, & Reflective.*

תְּמַסְּמָה: "He reviled." *Intensitive.*

The chief peculiarity of these four species consists in doubling the third radical, or gemination.—As we shall have an opportunity of treating more fully upon the Geminant Verbs, we merely mention these forms here; and pass on to the remaining forms of the Regular Trilateral Verb.

T. TWENTIETH CONJUGATION.

אֲגִפְגָּה: He talked one out of any thing, dissuaded.

This and the Twenty-first and Twenty-fourth species are rather remarkable for their singular Preformatives, which are not in use in the cognate dialects. The conjugation of **אֲגִפְגָּה:** is similar to that of **אֲגִזְגָּה:** we therefore proceed.

U. TWENTY-FIRST CONJUGATION.

אֲפִלְפָּגָה: He folded his hands.

In what the peculiar force of this species consists, we cannot determine.

V. TWENTY-SECOND CONJUGATION.

אֲתַלְתָּה: He rubbed thin between his fingers.

The reduplication of the second and of the third radical, which consti-

tutes the peculiar character of this species, serves to express, as a sort of diminution, a peculiar modification of the original action.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAE.

Ճ. ՃԱԴԱ: { he rubbed thin between
his fingers, &c. | **Ճ. ՃԱԴԱ:** they rubbed thin, &c.

Present and Future.

Ք. ՔՃԱԴԱ: he rubs thin, &c. | **Ք. ՔՃԱԴԱ:** they rub thin, &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d pers. masc.

Simple.

Ք. ՔՃԱԴԱ: &c.| **Ք. ՔՃԱԴԱ:** &c.*Compound Preterite.*

Ք. ՔՃԱԴԱ: { he rubbed (&c.) thin, | **Ք. ՔՃԱԴԱ:** { they rubbed (&c.)
inչ: } &c. | inչ: } thin, &c.

Compound of Probability.

Ք. ՔՃԱԴԱ: { he may probably | **Ք. ՔՃԱԴԱ:** { they may probably
Ք. ՔՄՖԱ: } rub thin, &c. &c. | Ք. ՔՄՖԱ: } rub thin, &c.

3d pers. masc.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

Ք. ՔՃԱԴԱ: may he rub thin, &c. | **Ք. ՔՃԱԴԱ:** may they rub thin, &c.

3d pers. masc.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

Ճ. ՃԱԴԱ: he rubbing thin, &c. | **Ճ. ՃԱԴԱՓ:** they rubbing thin &c.

Compound Aorist.

Ճ. ՃԱԴԱՓ: { he rubs (rubbed) | **Ճ. ՃԱԴԱՓ:** { they rub (rubbed)
thin, &c. | thin, &c.

Compound Preterite.

Ճ. ՃԱԴԱ: { he rubbed (was rub- | **Ճ. ՃԱԴԱՓ:** { they rubbed (were
inչ: } bing) thin, &c. | inչ: } rubbing) thin, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **Ճ. ՃԱԴԱ:** { do thou rub | **Ճ. ՃԱԴԱ:** do you rub thin, &c.
Fem. **Ճ. ՃԱԴԱ:** { thin, &c.

6. INFINITIVE.

ՍՈՒՃԱԴԱ: to rub thin, the rubbing thin between the fingers.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **Ճ. ՃԱԴԱ:** one who rubs thin, &c.

Relative Perf. **Ք. ՔՃԱԴԱ:** he who has rubbed thin, &c.

Pres. **Ք. ՔՃԱԴԱ:** he who rubs thin, &c. &c.

W. TWENTY-THIRD CONJUGATION.

Τάτατα: It was rubbed thin between the fingers.

This is a Passive derivation from the preceding conjugation, to be treated entirely as the Fourth Conjugation.

X. TWENTY-FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Χρυσόφ: It shone, glittered, sparkled, resplended.

This form seems to be derived from Πέψι: "to fulminate," "to lighten"; and the Preformative Χρυσ—: appears to have either a diminutive or a frequentative effect.

2. *Conjugation of various Imperfect Forms of the Triliteral Verbs.*

Having thus exhibited the conjugation of the various forms of the Regular and Perfect Triliteral Verb, we now proceed to the consideration of the Imperfect Forms of Triliteral, of Perfect and Imperfect Forms of Biliteral, and of the various forms of Pluriliteral Verbs. We shall endeavour to point out, especially by paradigms, where it is necessary, and the peculiarities in the flexion and conjugation of each; not in order to accumulate materials for the memory, but to facilitate the comprehension of the structure of this part of the language. We notice,

I. TRILITERAL VERBS whose First Conjugation is A (χ: or ο::)

The chief peculiarity of these verbs consists in the liability under which they are to have the first radical contracted with every Preformative acceding to the Verb, according to the rule laid down in Part I. Chap. VII. 2. A.B. For the purpose of exemplifying, we select the two Verbs χρωι: "he believed," and χλαδ: "he passed."

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Simple Form. χρωι: He believed.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite. Regular, as ηπος::

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. Ρψωφα: he ... fem. Τψωφητ: she } believes, will	Ρψωφα: they believe, will
2d .. masc. Τψωφηψ: thou believest, wilt ... fem. Τψωφηη: } believe.	Τψωφηψη: you believe, will
... hon. 1. Ρψωφα: } you believe, will	
... ... 2. Τψωφηψη: }	
1st.. com. Ζψωφηψ: I believe, shall	Ζεψωφηψ: we believe, shall

2. CONTINGENT,

As the Indicative Present, without the Auxiliary ՚Ա:

SINGULAR.	3. SUBJUNCTIVE.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. քօսԴ: may he		քօսԴ: may they believe.
... ... fem. ՚ԻօսԴ: may she		
2d .. masc. ՚Ի-օսԴ: } mayest thou	believe	՚ԻօսԴ: may you believe.
.. .. fem. ՚Ի-օսԴ: }		
.. .. hon. 1. քօսԴ: } may you	believe	
.. .. 2. ՚Ի-օսԴ: }		
1st .. com. ՚ԱօսԴ: may I		՚Ա-օսԴ: may we believe.

3d pers. masc. 4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

՚Ա-ՊՈՒ: he believing, &c. | ՚Ա-ՊՈՒՈՒ: they believing, &c.

Regular; as, ՚Ի-ՊՈՒ: &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ՚ԱօսԴ: } do thou believe! | ՚ԱօսԴ: do ye believe!

Fem. ՚ԱօսԴ: }

6. INFINITIVE.

ՊՊՕՍԴ: to believe, the believing, faith, trust.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, ՚ԱօսԴ: one who believes, a believer.

Relative Perfect, քօսԴ: he who believed. քօսԴՒ: she who believed, &c.

Relative Present, ՊՊ-ՔՊԾԴ: he who believes, &c.

ՊՊ-ՔՊԾԴ: she who believes, &c.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Objective Voice.

՚ԵՄԴ: He was believed, accredited, was trustworthy, faithful,
entrusted himself.

Flexion and Conjugation according to the Fourth Conjugation of the Regular Triliteral Verb; with the exception, that the characteristic ՚Ե: because it has joined to itself the vowel of the first radical, is not dropped, but retained in all the forms.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
՚ԵՄԴ: he was trusted, &c.		՚ԵՄԴ: they were trusted, &c.

Present and Future.

Ե-՚ԵՄՖՃ: he is trusted, &c. | Ե-՚ԵՄՖՃ: they are trusted, &c.

SINGULAR.

2. CONTINGENT.

PLURAL.

Ճ-ԹԱՌ: &c.**| Ճ-ԹԱՌ:** &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d pers. masc.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Ճ-ԹԱՐ: he being trusted, &c. | **Ճ-ԹԱՆՈՒ:** they being trusted, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **Ճ-ԹԱՐ:** } be thou faithful. | **ԹԱՌ:** be ye faithful.
Fem. **Ճ-ԹԱՐ:** }

6. INFINITIVE.

ԱՅ-Ճ-ԹԱՌ: to be believed, faithfulness, &c.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ԹԱՐ:** one who is believed.Rel. Pret. **Բ-Ճ-ԹԱՐ:** he who was believed, faithful, &c.Present, **Բ ԹԱՐ-Ճ-ԹԱՌ:** he who is believed, &c.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***Ճ-ԹԱՐ:** He made believe, persuaded.

This form corresponds with the Eighth Conjugation of the Perfect Verb **Ճ-ԹԻՌՈՒՀ:** The first radical **Ճ:** is absorbed by the characteristic Pre-formative **Ճ-:** No Subjunctive form.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***Ճ-ԹԱՐԴ:** He accredited, attested, entrusted.

This form, which joins the characteristics of the Objective and of the Transitive Voice in nature and form, answers the Tenth Conjugation of the Perfect Trilateral Verb.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ԹՂԱԾ:** Passed and repassed, trespassed, varied.

In this form, which corresponds with the Fourteenth Conjugation of the Regular Trilateral Verb, the first radical, **Ճ:**, is dropped; but the **Թ:** is retained when Prefixes are joined; e.g. Contingent, **Ք-ԹՂԱԾ:** Infinitive, **ԱՅ-ԹՂԱԾ:**

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative and Intensive Voice.***አስተላለድ:** He made pass in different ways.In this form the Causative **አስተ**: is joined to the preceding Conjugation.

II. SECOND CLASS OF IMPERFECT TRILITERALS.

Trilateral Geminants.

(See page 56, II.)

These verbs seem to have been derived from Biliterals which are lost, but whose second radical has been doubled. (See Part I. Ch. VII. 2. D.) In conjugating these verbs, the geminant letters are often contracted into one; but that letter, although the Abyssinians have no mark for distinguishing the accent, shows its origin, by having the tone.

It will be observed, that there are, among the ten different Conjugations of this class, four which have the **ቃ:**, either with the Transitive **አ:**, or the Intransitive **ጥ:** prefixed.

In looking at the numerous verbs of this class, mentioned in the note, page 56, it will be seen that all classes of letters, except the gutturals and the vowel letters, are subject to gemination.

The general mode of conjugating being the same in this as in all other classes of verbs, attention is to be paid especially to those forms which have gemination, and to those which have the contraction.

After these preliminary remarks, we proceed to give the Paradigms.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

አΦΦ: *neut.* He went away; *act.* He dismissed.

Gemination exists in this Conjugation—in the Indicative, Preterite, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive and Simple, and Relative Preterite Participles: *Contraction* in the remaining Moods and Tenses.

1. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. **አΦΦ:** he dismissed.**አΦΦ:** they dismissed.... . . fem. **አΦΦጥ:** she dismissed.**አΦΦጥ:** you dismissed.2d .. masc. **አΦΦሂ:** thou dismissedst.... . . fem. **አΦΦሽ:** you dismissed.... . . hon. 1. **አΦΦ:** } you dismissed.... . . . 2. **አΦΦጥሂ:** } you dismissed.1st .. com. **አΦΦሂ:** I dismissed.**አΦPhi:** we dismissed.

SINGULAR.

Present and Future.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. ☒ΦΔ:	he } dismisses.	☒ΦΔ: they dismiss.
... fem. ☒ΦΛ᳚:	she }	
2d .. masc. ☒ΦΛ᳚:	thou dismissest.	☒ΦΛ᳚: you dismiss.
... fem. ☒ΦΛ᳚:		
... hon. 1. ☒ΦΔ:	you dismiss.	
... hon. 2. ☒ΦΛ᳚:		
1st .. com. ☒ΦΛ᳚:	I dismiss.	☒ΦΛ᳚: we dismiss.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. ☒Φ:	fem. ☒Φ:	☒Φ:
2d	☒Φ:	☒Φ:
.... fem. ☒Φ:	☒Φ:	
.... hon. 1. ☒Φ:	2. ☒Φ:	

1. **☒Φ:****☒Φ:**

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ☒ΦΦ:	may he	☒ΦΦ: may they dismiss.
... . . fem. ☒ΦΦ:	may she	
2d .. masc. ☒ΦΦ:	mayest thou	☒ΦΦ: may you dismiss.
... . . fem. ☒ΦΦ:		
... . . hon. 1. ☒ΦΦ:	may you	
... 2. ☒ΦΦ:		
1st .. com. ☒ΦΦ:	may I	☒ΦΦ: may we dismiss.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d p. maso. ☒Φ:	he	☒ΦΦ: they dismissing.
... . . fem. ☒Φ:	she	
2d .. masc. ☒Φ᳚:	thou	☒Φ᳚: you dismissing.
... . . fem. ☒Φ᳚:		
... . . hon. 1. ☒ΦΦ:	you	
... 2. ☒Φ᳚:		
1st .. com. ☒Φ:	I	☒Φ: we dismissing.

Compound Aorist.

3d p. masc. ☒ΦΔ:	he dismisses, &c.	☒ΦΦΔ: they dismiss.
... . . fem. ☒ΦΛ᳚:	she dismisses.	
2d .. masc. ☒ΦΨΔ:	thou dismissest.	☒Φ᳚Δ: you dismiss.
... . . fem. ☒ΦΨΔ:		
... . . hon. 1. ☒ΦΦΔ:	you dismiss.	
... 2. ☒Φ᳚Δ:		
1st .. com. ☒ΦΨΛ᳚:	I dismiss.	☒ΦΦΔ: we dismiss.

Compound Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR. PLURAL.
ΔΦ: ήπιξ: he dismissed, &c. | **ΔΦΦ:** ήπιξ: they dismissed, &c.

5. IMPERATIVE.

m. **ΔΦΦ:** *fem.* **ΔΦΦ:** do thou dismiss. | **ΔΦΦ:** do ye dismiss.

6. INFINITIVE.

ΩΔΦΦ: To dismiss, the dismissal, dismissal.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple.

Simple Act. **ΔΦΦ:** one who dismisses.

Pass. **ΔΦΦ:** one who is dismissed.

Rel. Perf. **ΡΔΦΦ:** he who has dismissed.

Pres. **ΡΩΔΦ:** he who dismisses.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active or Transitive Voice.

λεφφ: He thinned, rarefied, refined.

We need scarcely to mention, that this form corresponds with the Third Conjugation of the Perfect Triliterals. Gemination prevails in the Preterite, Subjunctive, Infinitive, Simple, and Preterite Participles; Contraction in the Indicative Present, the Contingent, and Rel. Part. Present; both Gemination and Contraction in the Constructive and Imperative. Having presented a pretty full view of the preceding conjugation, it will suffice in the present one to give merely the leading types; i.e. 3d person masc. sing. and common plural of those paradigms which have all the Persons, besides the more simple Moods.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR. PLURAL.
λεφφ: he refined, &c. | **λεφφ:** they refined.

Present and Future.

ρεφφ: he refines. | **ρεφφ:** they refine.

2. CONTINGENT.

ρεφ: | **ρεφ:**

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ρεφφ: may he refine. | **ρεφφ:** may they refine.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

λεφ: and **λεφφ:** he refining. | **λεφφ:** and } **λεφφφ:** they refining.

Compound Aorist.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

λεψις: and } he refines.
λεψισ: }

PLURAL.

λεψισ: and } they refine.
λεψισ: }*Compound Preterite.***λεψις:** ιπτ: and **λεψισ:** ιπτ:: | **λεψισ:** ιπτ: and **λεψισ:**
he refined. | ιπτ:: they refined.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **λεψις:** and **λεψισ:** do thou | **λεψις:** and **λεψισ:** do ye refine.
Fem. **λεψις:** and **λεψισ:** refine.

6. INFINITIVE.

συγγένεια: to refine, the refining, rarefaction.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **λεψισ:** a refiner.Rel. Perf. **ρεψισ:** he who refined.Pres. **ρεψισ:** he who refines.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive or Objective Voice.***τλεψισ:** He was dismissed.

This conjugation has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive. Contraction takes place only in the Constructive Mood. Besides this, it is regularly conjugated, after the manner of the Fourth Conjugation of the Perfect Trilateral Verbs.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Active and Intensive Voice.***λεψισ:** He yawned. **λεψισ:** He persecuted.

Both in nature and form, this conjugation resembles the Fifth of the Perfect Trilateral Verb. It preserves gemination in the Indicative Preterite, the Imperative, Infinitive, and Simple and Perfect Participle. In the other Moods and Tenses, it is contracted.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

λεψισ: he persecuted.

PLURAL.

| **λεψισ:** they persecuted.*Present and Future.***ρεψισ:** he persecutes.| **ρεψισ:** they persecute.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ያጥድ:

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

አጥድ: he persecuting.**| አጥዶዥ:** they persecuting.*Compound Aorist.***አጥድዋል:** he persecutes.**| አጥድዋል:** they persecute.*Compound Preterite.***አጥድ፡ ንበረ:** he persecuted.**| አጥድዎ፡ ንበረ:** they persecuted.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አጥድሩ፡** do thou perse-**| አጥድሩ፡** do ye persecute.Fem. **አጥድቸ፡** cute.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማጥድድ፡ to persecute, the persecuting, persecution.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አጥድኝ፡** a persecutor.*Rel. Perf.* **ያጥድኝ፡** he who persecuted.*Present,* **የጠቅጥኝ፡** he who persecutes.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intensive Voice.***ጥኩድድ፡** He was persecuted, habitually persecuted.

This form is conjugated after the Sixth Conjugation of the Perfect Verb; has no peculiar Subjunctive; and geminates and contracts after the third form of this class.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አጥመረጥ፡** He embittered.

Corresponds with the Eighth Conjugation of the Perfect Trilateral Verb, and is conjugated like the first form of this class.

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አንጥተት፡** He cheated.

A peculiar form, of which, as we have not hitherto had a similar one, we give here an outline.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite Regular.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

አንጠተ፡ he cheated.

PLURAL.

| አንጠተዎ፡ they cheated.*Present and Future.***የንጠተል፡** he cheats.**| የንጠተሉ፡** they cheat.

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

| የንጠተ፡

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

| አንጠተወ፡ they cheating.*Compound Aorist.***አንጠተዋል፡** he cheats.**| አንጠተዋል፡** they cheat.*Compound Perfect.***አንጠተ፡ ንበሩ፡** he cheated.**| አንጠተወ፡ ንበሩ፡** they cheated.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አንጠተ፡**} do thou cheat. | **አንጠተዎ፡** do ye cheat.
Fem. **አንጠተች፡**}

6. INFINITIVE.

መንጠተት፡ to cheat, the cheating.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አንጠተ፡** a cheater.*Rel. Perf.* **የንጠተተ፡** he who cheated.*Present,* **የመንጠተች፡** he who cheats.

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተንጠተ፡** He was cheated.

This is the Passive form of the preceding derivation; and, in gemination, is regulated by the Third Conjugation of this class.

I. K. NINTH AND TENTH CONJUGATIONS.

*Reflective Voice.***አንጠራ፡** and **ተንጠራ፡** He stretched himself.

The peculiarity of these two forms, the power of which seems to be the same, consists in the length of both the geminating letters. On account of their length, they cannot be contracted. They assume, therefore, no Subjunctive form; and the Geminants retain their length, except in the

Constructive, which retains the last radical short, and enters a ՚: which servile, also, is as a paragoge added in the Infinitive; thus:

SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

ՀՅՄԸՆԾԴ: { he stretching him- | **ՀՅՄԸՆԾԴՈՒ:** { they stretching
self, &c. themselves, &c.

INFINITIVE.

ՄՊՅՄԸՆԾԴ.Դ: the stretching, to stretch, oneself.

III. THIRD CLASS OF IMPERFECT TRILITERALS.

Geminants whose first radical is Հ::

This class numbers only a few Verbs. They combine the imperfections of contraction in the beginning and at the end, i.e. the imperfections of both the preceding classes. For an exhibition, we select the Verbs **ՀՀՀ:** "he commanded," and **ՀԱՍՏԱ:** "it was painful."

This class has but four Conjugations; the first of which is Intransitive or Active; the second, Objective, Intransitive, or Reflective; the third, Causative; and the fourth, Intensive.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ՀՀՀ: He commanded.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

ՀՀՀ: he commanded.

PLURAL.

| **ՀՀՀ-:** they commanded.

Present and Future.

ՔՀԱ: he commands,

| **ՔՀԱ-:** they command.

3d pers. masc.

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

ՔՀ-:

| **ՔՀ-:**

3d pers. masc.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ՔՀԻ: may he command.

| **ՔՀԻ-:** may they command.

4. SIMPLE CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **ՀԻ:** he commanding.

| **ՀԻՓ-:** they commanding.

... ... fem. **ՀԿ:** she commanding.

2d ... masc. **ՀԻՍ:** thou commanding.

| **ՀԿԻ-:** you commanding.

... ... fem. **ՀԻՌ:**

... ... hon. 1. **ՀԻՓ-:** } you commanding.

... ... hon. 2. **ՀԿԻ-:** } you commanding.

1st.. com. **ՀԻ:** I commanding.

| **ՀԻՑ:** we commanding.

Compound Aorist.

3d p. masc. ՀԻՓՃ: he }	commands.	ՀԻՓՃ: they command.
... ... fem. ՀԿՃՔ: she }		
2d .. masc. ՀԻՎՃ: }	thou commandest.	ՀԿԴՔՃ: you command.
... ... fem. ՀԿՌՃ: }		
... ... hon. 1. ՀԻՓՃ: }	you command.	
... ... hon. 2. ՀԿԴՔՃ: }		
1st.. com. ՀԿՄՃԱ: I command.		ՀԿՄՃԱ: we command.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ՀԿԻ:** } do thou command. | **ՀԿԻ:** do ye command.
 Fem. **ՀԿԻՅ:** }

6. INFINITIVE.

ՊԳԻՒ: to command, the commanding, command.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple., **ՀԿԻ:** one who commands, a commander.

Rel. Pret., **ՔԻՒ:** he who commanded.

Present, **ԲՈՎԱՐԻ:** he who commands.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive.

ԴԱՍԱ: He felt pain, was sick. **ԴԻՒ:** He was commanded, he obeyed.

In this conjugation, the **Դ:** is retained throughout; and contraction of the second and third radical takes place in the Constructive Mood only. No Subjunctive. Second radical is treated as in all the Objective forms.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Transitive and Causative Voice.

ՀՈՎԱԾՈ: He made sick, gave or caused pain.

The first radical **Հ:**, absorbed in the Preformative **Ր:**, undergoes no further change. Gemination prevails in the Preterite, Indicative, Imperative, Infinitive, and Simple and Preterite Participles; Contraction in the Indicative, Present, and Constructive; and both Gemination and Contraction in the Contingent. Respecting the latter, we think, that when it stands by itself, it is geminated; but when it receives any addition at the beginning or at the end, it is contracted.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አበታሙ**: He nursed sick persons.

This conjugation corresponds with the Tenth of the Perfect Triliterals, and with the Fourth of the First Class of Imperfect Triliterals. Contraction takes place only in the Constructive Mood.

3. *Conjugation of Biliteral Verbs.*

Biliteral Verbs are, in the Amharic Language, exceedingly numerous; owing especially, as will be seen hereafter, to the many contractions from Trilateral Verbs, by which they became Biliterals. In treating on these Verbs, it will be best to divide them into four distinct classes; namely, (a) Perfect; (b) Imperfect; (c) Contracted; (d) Irregular and Anomalous Biliteral Verbs.

I. FIRST CLASS.—*Perfect Biliterals.*

These are Verbs which have the two radical letters in the first form, do not begin with any vowel letter, and are conjugated regularly. They have this resemblance to some of the Contracted forms, that the paragogic **ጥ**: is added to most of its Infinitives, and enters into the Constructives. They are conjugated through Eight different Species or Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active, and Transitive Voice.***የተ**: He flourished. **ገኘ**: Was great. **ከተ**: He gave.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ከተ : he gave.	ከተ : they gave.
.... fem. ከተች : she gave.	
2d .. masc. ከተሁ : } thou gavest.	ከተችሁ : you gave.
.... fem. ከተሽ : }	
.... hon. 1. ከተ : }	
..... 2. ከተችሁ : }	
1st .. com. ከተሁ : I gave.	ከተኩ : we gave.

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc.	ደሰጠል :	he gives.	ደሰጠሉ :	they give.
... . . fem.	ተሰጠለች :	she gives.		
2d .. . masc.	ተሰጠለሁ :	{ thou	ተሰጠለችሁ :	you give.
... . . fem.	ተሰጠለሽ :	{ givest.		
... . . hon. 1.	ደሰጠል :	{ you		
... 2.	ተሰጠለችሁ :	{ give.		
1st .. . com.	ከሰጠለሁ :	I give.	እንሰጠለሁ :	we give.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ደሰጥ :	fem. ተሰጥ :	ደሰጠ :	
2d .. . masc.	ተሰጥ :	fem. ተሰጠ :	ተሰጠ :	
... . . hon. 1.	ደሰጠ :	{ 2. ተሰጠ :		
1st	ከሰጥ :		እንሰጠ :	

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ደሰጥ :	may he give.	ደሰጠ :	may they give.
... . . fem.	ተሰጥ :	may she give.	ተሰጠ :	may you give.
2d .. . masc.	ተሰጥ :	{ mayest thou		
... . . fem.	ተሰጠ :	{ give.		
... . . hon. 1.	ደሰጠ :	{ may you		
... 2.	ተሰጠ :	{ give.		
1st .. . com.	ከሰጥ :	may I give.	እንሰጠ :	may we give.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE with **ተ**:

3d p. masc.	ስጥተ :	he giving.	ስጥተዎ :	they giving.
... . . fem.	ስጥታ :	she giving.	ስጥታችሁ :	you giving.
2d .. . masc.	ስጥተሁ :	{ thou		
... . . fem.	ስጥተሽ :	{ giving.		
... . . hon. 1.	ስጥተዎ :	{ you		
... 2.	ስጥታችሁ :	{ giving.		
1st .. . com.	ስጥቻ :	I giving.	ስጥተኝ :	we giving.

Compound Aorist.

3d p. masc.	ስጥተዋል :	he gives.	ስጥተዋል :	they give.
... . . fem.	ስጥታለች :	she gives.	ስጥታችል :	you give.
2d .. . masc.	ስጥተሩል :	{ thou		
... . . fem.	ስጥተኞል :	{ givest.		
... . . hon. 1.	ስጥተዋል :	{ you		
... 2.	ስጥታችኞል :	{ give.		
1st .. . com.	ስጥቻለሁ :	I give.	ስጥተኝል :	we give.

Simple Form without ቴ: (rare).

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. ፳·፻ : he being great.	፳·፻·፻ : they being great.
.... fem. ፳·፻ : she being great.	
2d ... masc. ፳·፻·፻ : } thou being	
.... fem. ፳·፻·፻ : } great.	፳·፻·፻ : you being great.
.... hon. 1. ፳·፻·፻ : } you being	
.... 2. ፳·፻·፻ : } great.	
1st... com. ፳·፻ : I being great.	፳·፻·፻ : we being great.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ስጥ : ስጥ : } do thou give.	ስጠ : ስጠ : do ye give.
Fem. ስጠ : ስጠ : }	

6. INFINITIVE.

መስጠት: to give, the giving. **መጥጥ**: to drink, the drinking.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ስጠ**: and **ስጠ**: a giver.

Rel. Pret. **የስጠ**: he who gave.

Pres. **የሱስጠ**: he who gives.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active, Transitive Voice.

እያን: He beautified, praised. **እያን**: He grew.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. እያን : he grew.	እያን : they grew.
.... fem. እያንች : she grew.	
2d ... masc. እያንወ : } thou	
.... fem. እያንወ : } grewest.	እያንች : you grew.
.... hon. 1. እያን : } you	
.... 2. እያንች : } grew.	
1st... com. እያንወ : I grew.	እያን : we grew.

3d pers. masc. *Present and Future.*

ያያንል: he grows, &c. | **ያያንል**: they grow.

2. CONTINGENT.

ያያን: &c.

| **ያያን**: &c.

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE, with ተ::

SINGULAR.

አበቃቻ፡ he preparing. | **አበቃቻዎ፡** they preparing.

PLURAL.

Without ተ::

አደገ፡ he growing. | **አደገዎ፡** they growing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አደገ፡**} do thou grow. | **አደገ፡** do ye grow.
Fem. **አደገ፡**

6. INFINITIVE.

መሸጥ፡ to grow, the growth.**መሸጥቷ፡** to prepare, the preparing, preparation.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **አደገ፡** one who grows. **አጠቃ፡** one who irrigates.Rel. Pret. **ዋደገ፡** he who grew.Pres. **ዋሙዋደገ፡** he who grows.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Objective Voice.

ተሰጠ፡ He was given.

This has nothing peculiar. It is treated like other objective forms, and has the paragogic ተ:: uniformly.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Transitive or Causative Voice.

አሰግና፡ He beautified, glorified.

Has the paragogic ተ::

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

አሰግና፡ he beautified. | **አሰግናዎ፡** they beautified.

Present and Future.

ያሰግኬል፡ he beautifies. | **ያሰግኬልዎ፡** they beautify.

2. CONTINGENT.

ያሰግና፡ | **ያሰግና፡**

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ያሰግና፡ may he beautify. | **ያሰግና፡** may they beautify.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

አሰግናቻ፡ he beautifying. | **አሰግናቻዎ፡** they beautify.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **አሰግና፡**} do thou beautify. | **አሰግና፡** do ye beautify.
Fem. **አሰግና፡**

6. INFINITIVE.

መጥገኗት: to beautify, beautifying.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple. **እስተኛ:** beautifier.

Rel. Pret. **ያስተና:** he who beautified.

Present, **ሙዳያስተና:** he who beautifies.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

Transitive or Causative Voice.

እነጋገር: He caused to grow, trained, reared, educated.

Differs only in form from the preceding conjugations. It has no paragogic **ተ:**, and is conjugated like **እነመሬት:** in the Third Conjugation of the first class of Imperfect Trilateral Verbs.

F. G. H. The Sixth, Seventh, and Eighth Conjugations are treated like Trilateral Geminants.

II. SECOND CLASS.

Imperfect Bilaterals, which have ክ: for the first Radical Letter.

The first radical **ክ:** undergoes the usual changes, as shown in the preceding conjugations. The paragogic **ተ:** prevails through all the conjugations of this class, which contains but few verbs. The verb **ካሬ:** "He saw," containing all the different forms of Conjugations of this class, we have selected for exhibition.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Subjective, Intransitive, and Transitive Voice.

ካሬ: He saw.

I. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

ካሬ: he saw, &c., like **ብዴ:**

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. **የያዥ:** he sees.

የያዥ: they see.

... ... fem. **ታያዥች:** she sees.

ታያዥች: you see.

... ... masc. **ታያዥ:** } thou seest.

ታያዥ: you see.

... ... fem. **ታያዥች:** } you see.

1st.. com. **እያዥሁ:** I see.

እያዥሁ: we see.

2. CONTINGENT.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. ያለ፡	fem. ተለ፡	ያለ፡፡
2d .. masc. ተለ፡	fem. ተበ፡	ተለ፡
... hon. l. ያየ፡	2. ተየ፡	
1st.. com. ኞለ፡		ኞችለ፡

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ያለ፡ may he see.	ያለ፡ may they see.
... fem. ተለ፡ may she see.	
2d p. masc. ተለ፡ } mayest thou see.	ተለ፡ may you see.
... fem. ተበ፡ } mayest thou see.	
... hon. l. ያየ፡ } may you see.	
... ... 2. ተየ፡ } may you see.	
1st.. com. ኞለ፡ may I see.	ኞችለ፡ may we see.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

Simple.

3d p. masc. ኞችለ፡ he seeing.	ኞችተዥ፡ they seeing.
... fem. ኞችተ፡ she seeing.	
2d p. masc. ኞችተዥ፡ } thou seeing.	ኞችተቻ፡ you seeing.
... fem. ኞችተዥ፡ } thou seeing.	
... hon. l. ኞችተዥ፡ } you seeing.	
... ... 2. ኞችተቻ፡ } you seeing.	
1st.. com. ኞችተ፡ I seeing.	ኞችተን፡ we seeing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ኞለ፡ } do thou see.	ኞለ፡ do ye see.
Fem. ኞበ፡ }	

6. INFINITIVE.

ሙያጥ፡ the seeing, sight, aspect.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None. *Relative Preterite*, **ያበ፡** he who saw.

Present, **ያጠቅምለ፡** he who sees.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Passive, Reflective, or Intransitive Voice.

ተበ፡ He was seen, appeared.

1. INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.

Preterite. PLURAL.

3d p. masc. **՚**: he was seen. | **՚**: they were seen.

... fem. **՚**: she was seen.

2d p. masc. **՚**:

... fem. **՚**:

... hon. 1. **՚**:

... 2. **՚**:

1st.. com. **՚**:

Present and Future.

3d p. masc. **՚**: he is seen. | **՚**: they are seen.

... fem. **՚**: { she is seen,
... &c.

2. SIMPLE CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. **՚**: fem. **՚**: | **՚**:

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **՚**: he appearing, &c. | **՚**: they appearing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **՚**: } do thou appear. | **՚**: do ye appear.
Fem. **՚**: }

6. INFINITIVE.

՚: to be seen, the appearing, appearance.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None. *Relative Preterite*, **՚**: he who appeared.

Present, **՚**: he who appears.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Transitive and Causative Voice.

՚: He made to be seen, caused to appear, showed.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. **՚**: he showed. | **՚**: they showed.

... fem. **՚**: she showed.

2d p. masc. **՚**: f. **՚**: | **՚**:

... hon. 1. **՚**: 2. **՚**:

... com. **՚**:

՚:

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. የስም፡ he shows. | የስም፡ they show.

... fem. ታስምለች፡ she shows.

2d p. masc. ታስምለሁ፡

... fem. ታስምለሽ፡

... hon. 1. የስም፡

... ... 2. ታስምለችሁ፡

1st.. com. አስምለሁ፡

3d pers. masc.

2. CONTINGENT.

የስም፡ fem. ታስም፡ &c.

| የስም፡ &c.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d p. masc. የስም፡ may he show. | የስም፡ &c.

... fem. ታስም፡ &c. may she show

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. አስምታ፡ he showing. | አስምታው፡

... fem. አስምታ፡ she showing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አስም፡ } do thou show. | አስም፡ do ye show.

Fem. አስም፡ }

6. INFINITIVE.

ማስምጥ፡ To show, the showing.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.

Rel. Pret. የስም፡ he who showed.

Pres. የመሆኝም፡ he who shows.

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Transitive and Causative Voice.

አስታም፡ He made to be seen, brought into sight.

1. INDICATIVE PRETERITE.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

አስታም፡ brought into sight.

| አስታም፡ &c.

አስታምች፡ &c., like the preceding.

Present and Future.

የስታም፡ he brings into sight. | የስታም፡ they bring into sight.

2. CONTINGENT.

የስታም፡ fem. ታስታም፡ &c. | የስታም፡ &c.

3. SURJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

3d pers. masc.

አስተቻቸት: he bringing into sight. | **አስተቻቸተዎች**: { they bringing into sight.

PLURAL.

Masc. **አስተቻቸ**: } do thou bring | **አስተቻቸ**: do ye bring into sight.
 Fem. **አስተቻቸ**: } into sight.

5. IMPERATIVE.

መስተቻቸ: to bring into sight.

6. INFINITIVE.

መስተቻቸታ: None.
Rel. Pret. **ያስተቻቸ**: he who brought into sight.
Pres. **መመያስተቻቸ**: he who brings into sight.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

Reciprocal Voice.

ጥያቄ: He was with another in reciprocal sight; Looked at each other.

As this is not used in our languages in the Singular, we shall omit the translation, and give merely the requisite forms in Amharic.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

3d pers. masc.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

ጥያቄ: fem. **ጥያቄቸ**: | **ጥያቄ**:

Present and Future.

ይጥያቄል: fem. **ጥጥያቄልቸ**: | **ይጥያቄል**:

2. CONTINGENT.

ይጥያቄ: fem. **ጥጥያቄ**: | **ይጥያቄ**:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

ጥያቄቸ: fem. **ጥያቄቸ**: | **ጥያቄቸተዎች**:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ጥያቄ**: fem. **ጥያቄ**: | **ጥያቄ**:

6. INFINITIVE.

መወጥያቄቸ: the being in sight of each other; relation to each other.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple.—None. **Rel. Pret.** **ጥጥያቄ::** **Pres.** **መመጥጥያቄ::**

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

Causative and Reciprocalive.

አስተዋዕ : He made look at each other; placed over against each other.

Is not, in form, different from the preceding; save the prefixing of **አ**; and the changes which that undergoes; and, that in the Imperative it has **አስተዋኝ::**

III. THIRD CLASS.—*Contracted Biliterals.*

This very numerous class is derived from Triliterals; which, in the Ethiopic and Tigrē Languages, have either a Vowel letter **አ**: **ወ**: **ሮ**: or **ወ**:; or a Guttural **ሀ**: **ሐ**: **ቃ**: or **ነ**: contracted with the preceding letter. The letter to which their vowel has thus been joined has been made long; whilst the verb itself has become a biliteral one. In some few cases of Quadrilaterals, two contractions have been made; and we have therefore Biliteral Verbs of two long radicals. Verbs contracted from Triliterals differ, as to whether the lost letter stood formerly in the middle or at the end; and this materially determines their form of conjugation.

(aa.) Verbs with an absorbed Guttural at the end.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Intransitive and Active Voice.

ገበ : *intrs.* He entered (went in). Eth. **ገብእ::**

The second radical is always long; except in the Constructive Mood, and in the Simple Participle.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc. **ገበ :** he went in.

.... fem. **ገበች :** she went in.

2d .. masc. **ገበሁ :** } thou wentst in.
.... fem. **ገበሽ :** }

.... hon. 1. **ገበ :** } you went
.... . . 2. **ገበችሁ :** } in.

1st... . . **ገበሁ :** I went in.

FLURAL.

ገበ : they went in.

ገበችሁ : you went in.

ገበች : we went in.

3d pers. masc. *Present and Future.*

ጋገብ : he goes in, &c. | **ጋገብሁ :** they go in, &c.

2. CONTINGENT.

ጋገብ : fem. **ጥገብ :** | **ጋገብ :**

Q

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. גַּנְנָה : may he go in.	גַּנְנָה : may they go in.
.... fem. תַּנְנָה : may she go in.	
2d p. masc. תַּנְנָה : } mayest thou	תַּנְנָה : may you go in.
.... fem. תַּנְנָה : } go in.	
.... hon. 1. גַּנְנָה : } may you go	
.... 2. תַּנְנָה : } in.	
1st.. com. גַּנְנָה : may I go in.	גַּנְנָה : may we go in.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. m. גַּנְנָת : he entering.	גַּנְנָתָה : they entering.
.... f. גַּנְנָת : she entering.	
2d .. m. גַּנְנָתָה : fem. גַּנְנָתָה :	גַּנְנָתָה :
... hon. 1. גַּנְנָתָה : 2. גַּנְנָתָה :	
1st com. גַּנְנָת :	גַּנְנָת :

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. גַּנְנָה : }	
Fem. גַּנְנָה : }	גַּנְנָה : do ye enter.

6. INFINITIVE.

מִשְׁגַּנְנָה: to go in, the going in, the entrance.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple. **גַּנְנָה**: *intrs.* one who enters in.

גַּנְנָה: that which is entered into, *i.e.* the interior.

Rel. Pret. **גַּנְנָה**: he who entered.

Pres. **מִשְׁגַּנְנָה**: he who enters.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Transitive Voice.

גַּנְנָה: He made go in, introduced.—(Is quite regular.)

1. INDICATIVE.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR.	<i>Preterite.</i>	PLURAL.
גַּנְנָה : he introduced.	|	גַּנְנָה : they introduced.

Present and Future.

גַּנְנָה : he introduces.	|	גַּנְנָה :
----------------------------------	--	-------------------

2. CONTINGENT.

גַּנְנָה : fem. תַּנְנָה:	|	גַּנְנָה :
--	--	-------------------

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

3d pers. masc. SINGULAR. PLURAL.

ՔՂԴ: may he introduce. | **ՔՂՈՒ:** may they introduce.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

ՀՂՈՒՔ: he introducing. | **ՀՂՈՒԹՈՒ:** they introducing.

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ՀՂՈՒ:** } do thou introduce. | **ՀՂՈՒ:** do ye introduce.
Fem. **ՀՂՈՒ:** }

6. INFINITIVE.

ԾՂՈՒԴ: the introducing, introduction.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ՀՂՈՒ:** one who introduces.Rel. Perf. **ՔՂԴ:** he who introduced.Pres. **ԲԱՋՔՂԴ:** he who introduces.

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intransitive.***ՏՂԴ:** *impersonal.* It was proper, It belonged.

Is treated like other Passives—has no Subjunctive.

The Constructive has **ՏՂՈՒՔ:** and in other respects it is like **ՂԴ::**

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***ՀՂԴ:** He married.The **Ղ:** is long throughout; and the Preformative **Հ:** is treated as in all the Transitive forms.

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive of the preceding.***ՏՂԴ:** Was married.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***ՀՈՂԴ:** He caused to go in; introduced.Subjunctive, **ՔՈՂԴ::** | Imperative, **ՀՈՂԴ::**Constructive, **ՀՈՂՈՒՔ::** | Infinitive, **ԾՈՂՈՒԴ::**

All the other Forms quite regular.

C. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ΩΦΦ:** (from ΩΦ: it sufficed) was quite sufficient.

A geminating form. The long middle letter is retained throughout, and the rest treated like Τη::

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive and Reiterative.***ΑΓηηη:** He frequently went in, often cohabited, behaved properly.

This conjugation is like a transitive of the preceding one: the long penultima is retained throughout, and the rest treated like Αηη::

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

Αξηη: He comforted, strengthened.

The two middle letters remain long; Α: is treated as in all Transitive forms: there is no Subjunctive; and as to the rest, this conjugation is like the others of this class.

K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intense Passive.***Τχηη:** Was comforted.

Is treated like other Passives, retains the long penultima, and has the other peculiarities of this class.

(b.) *Forms with an Absorbed Guttural in the Middle.*

In these forms, the original guttural having been in the middle, on its absorption, the first radical has become long. It retains, however, its length only in the Indicative Preterite, the Imperative, and the Infinitive Moods of the Active; and through the whole of the Passive forms, except the Constructive. It has no peculiar form for the Subjunctive; but uses, as is generally done in such cases, the Contingent for the purpose. It has, besides, the paragogic Τ: extremely seldom; because it appears that letter is intended for compensation for final absorbed letters, of which there are none in this class.

This class has seven different Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

σηλ : (Eth. σηληλ :). He swore, took an oath.

1. INDICATIVE PTERERITE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. m. **σηλ :** he swore.

σηλε : they swore.

.... f. **σηλη :** she swore.

2d . . m. **σηλη :** fem. **σηλη :**

σηλητη :

.. hon. 1. **σηλ :** 2. **σηλητη :**

1st com. **σηλη :**

σηλ :

Present and Future.

3d p. m. **ρημηλ :** he swears. | **ρημηλ :** they swear.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. m. **ρημη :** fem. **τημη :** | **ρημη :**

3. SUBJUNCTIVE—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. m. **ρηλ :** he swearing.

ρηλο :

.... f. **ρηλ :** she swearing.

ρηλη :

2d . . m. **ρηλη :** fem. **ρηλη :**

ρηλητη :

.. hon 1. **ρηλο :** 2. **ρηλητη :**

1st com. **ρηλ :**

ρηλ :

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **σηλ :** do thou swear.

σηλ : do ye swear.

Fem. **σηλε :** }

6. INFINITIVE.

συσηλ : to swear, the swearing.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **σηλ :** one who swears.

Rel. Pret. **ρημη :** he who swore.

Pres. **ρημηρη :** he who swears.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Transitive Voice.

λησηλ : He made swear.

Contingent, **ρημη :** | *Imperative,* **λημη :**

Constructive, **λημη :** | *Infinitive,* **σηλη :**

(See the above remarks.)

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ጥማል:** He was sworn.

<i>Contingent,</i> የጠማል::	<i>Imperative,</i> ተጠማል::
<i>Constructive,</i> ተጠማል::	<i>Infinitive,</i> ሚስጠማል::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive (Causative) Voice.***እሰጣል:** He made swear.

<i>Contingent,</i> የሰጥማል::	<i>Imperative,</i> እሰጥማል::
<i>Constructive,</i> እሰጥማል::	<i>Infinitive,</i> መሰጥማል::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Frequentative (Intensive) Voice.***እመጣል:** Distributed by casting (lots). Radix, ተል: He cast.

<i>Contingent,</i> የጠመተል::	<i>Imperative,</i> እጠመተል::
<i>Constructive,</i> እጠመተል::	<i>Infinitive,</i> መጠመተል::

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Reciprocal Voice.***ጥመጣል:** Mutually swore, conspired.

<i>Contingent,</i> የጥመጣል::	<i>Imperative,</i> ተጥመጣል::
<i>Constructive,</i> ተጥመጣል::	<i>Infinitive,</i> መጥመጣል::

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ጥማለል::** He adjured, earnestly entreated.

<i>Contingent,</i> የጥማለል::	<i>Imperative,</i> ተጥማለል::
<i>Constructive,</i> ተጥማለል::	<i>Infinitive,</i> መጥማለል::

(c.c.) Forms with an Absorbed P: in the Middle.

These forms are determined by the rule laid down, Part I. Ch. VII. 4. E. On the absorption of the P: its corresponding vowel ē has been joined to the first radical; which, whenever it is shortened, changes ē into a short i; but when lengthened (as in the Fourth Conjugation), the first radical is put into the Fourth Order, and P: is restored. No paragogic ተ: is in this class.

We take the two Verbs, ጭመል: He sold, and አይድ: He went.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ሰመ : Active, He sold. Ethiopic, ወይመ :

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc.	ሰመ :	he sold.	ስመ :	they sold.
.... fem.	ሰመች :	she sold.		
2d .. masc.	ስተሁ :	fem. ቴተሽ :	ስተሁሁ :	
.... hon. 1.	ስመ :	2. ስተቅሁ :		
1st.. com.	ስተሁ :		ስተሁ :	

Present and Future.

3d p. masc.	ዶስተሁ :	he sells.	ዶስተሁ :	they sell.
-------------	--------	-----------	--------	------------

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ዶስታ :	fem. ተስታ :	ዶስተሁ :	
2d ...	ቻስታ :	fem. ተስቻ :	ቻስተሁ :	
.... hon. 1.	ዶስተሁ :	2. ተስተሁ :		
1st.. com.	ዶስታ :		ዶስተሁ :	

3d pers. masc.	ዶስታ :		3. SUBJUNCTIVE.	
ዶስታ :	may he sell.		ዶስተሁ :	may they sell.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc.	ስተ :	he selling.	ስተዎ :	
.... fem.	ስተ :	she selling.		
2d .. masc.	ስተሁ :	fem. ቴተሽ :	ስተሁሁ :	
.... hon. 1.	ስተዎ :			
.... ... 2.	ስተቅሁ :			
1st.. com.	ስተ :		ስተ :	

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ተስታ :	do thou sell.	6. INFINITIVE.	
Fem. ተስቻ :		ዶስተሁ :	do ye sell.

6. INFINITIVE.

ዶስተሁ : to sell, the selling, sale.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple (a.) Act. **ስምሩ :** one who sells, a seller.

(b.) **ስምሩ :** a thing sold, merchandize.

Rel. Preterite, **የስተሁ :** he who sold.

Present, **የዶስተሁ :** he who sells.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active and Transitive Voice.***କାହୁର୍ଗ:** He made go, drove the threshing ox.

<i>Contingent,</i> ଫଳ୍ଗ୍ର:	<i>Imperative,</i> କାହୁର୍ଗ୍:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ଫଳ୍ଗ୍ର୍:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ମ୍ଯଳ୍ଗ୍ରଃ:
<i>Constructive,</i> କାହୁର୍ଗ୍ରଃ:	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ତଳ୍ଲିଟ:** He was sold.

<i>Contingent,</i> ଦଳ୍ଲିତ୍:	<i>Imperative,</i> ତଳ୍ଲିତ୍:
<i>No Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive,</i> ମୁଳ୍ଲିତଃ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ତଳ୍ଲିତଃ:	

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ତଳ୍ଲିରତ୍:** He traded, dealt, carried on commerce.

<i>Contingent,</i> ଦଳ୍ଲିରତ୍:	<i>Imperative,</i> ତଳ୍ଲିରତ୍:
<i>Constructive,</i> ତଳ୍ଲିରତଃ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ମୁଳ୍ଲିରତଃ:

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative (Transitive) Voice.***କାନ୍ଧାର୍ଗ:** He made to go.

<i>Contingent,</i> ଫଳ୍ଧାର୍ଗ୍ର୍ର:	<i>Imperative,</i> କାନ୍ଧାର୍ଗ୍ରଃ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ଫଳ୍ଧାର୍ଗ୍ର୍:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ମ୍ଯଳ୍ଧାର୍ଗ୍ରଃ:
<i>Constructive,</i> କାନ୍ଧାର୍ଗ୍ରଃ:	

(dd.) *Forms with an Absorbed ଠ:* in the Middle.

According to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII. 5, and 6. the middle letter ଠ: has been absorbed; its vowel *o* attached to the first radical. This is further shortened, in the Subjunctive Construétive and Active Imperative, into *u*. But in those forms which have long letters, ଠ: is restored. In some of these, it forms diphthongs of the fourth order. Those forms of this class, whose first radical is a diphthong, as ଫ-ର୍: ଫ-ଲ୍: ଫ-ଟ୍: ଫ-ପ୍: ତା-ର୍: ତା-ଲ୍: ତା-ଟ୍: ତା-ପ୍:, have the Causative form with କାନ୍ଧ: and the paragogic ତା-:; which the forms with simple *o* have not.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active Voice.***Φσυ:** He stood.

1. INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	Preterite.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. Φσυ: he stood.	Φσυ·:	they stood.
... fem. Φσυ·:	she stood.	
2d .. masc. Φσυ·:	fem. Φσυ·:	Φση·:
... hon. 1. Φσυ·:	2. Φση·:	
1st.. com. Φσυ·:		Φση·:
	2. CONTINGENT.	
3d p. masc. ΥΦσυ: fem. ΤΦσυ:	ΥΦσυ·:	
2d .. masc. ΤΦσυ: fem. ΤΦση:	ΤΦσυ·:	
... hon. 1. ΥΦσυ: 2. ΤΦσυ·:		ΤΥΦσυ·:
1st.. com. ΗΦσυ·:		
	3. SUBJUNCTIVE.	
3d p. masc. ΥΦσυ: may he stand.	ΥΦσυ·:	may they stand.
... fem. ΤΦσυ: may she stand.		
	4. CONSTRUCTIVE.	
3d p. masc. Φσυ: he standing.	ΦσυΘ·:	they standing.
... fem. Φση: she standing.		
2d .. masc. Φσυ·:	Φση·:	
... hon. 1. ΦσυΘ·: 2. Φση·:		
1st.. com. Φση·:		Φση·:
	5. IMPERATIVE.	
Masc. Φσυ: } stand!		Φσυ·: do ye stand.
Fem. Φση: }		
	6. INFINITIVE.	
ΟυΦσυ: to stand, the standing, station, state.		
	7. PARTICIPLES.	
Simple, Φφση: one who stands (see Dictionary).	Φψη: Eth. standing,	
	straightforward.	
Rel. Pret. ΡΦσυ: he who stood.		
Pres. Ρση Φψη: he who stands.		

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***λΦσο:** He made to stand, erected.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ΡΦσο:	<i>Imperative,</i>	λΦσο:
<i>Subjunctive,</i>	ΡΦσο:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	σηΦσο::
<i>Constructive,</i>	λΦσο:		

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***τΦσο:** He was erected.—No Subjunctive.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ρΦσο: (τΦΦσο:)	<i>Imperative,</i>	τΦσο: (τΦΦσο:)
<i>Constructive,</i>	τΦσο::	<i>Infinitive,</i>	σηΦσο:: (σηΦΦσο:)

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***τΦΦσο:** He withstood, resisted.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ρΦΦσο:	<i>Imperative,</i>	τΦΦσο:
<i>Constructive,</i>	τΦΦσο:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	σηΦΦσο::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***λΠΦ-Ρ:** He caused to wait.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ρΠΦ-Σ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	λΠΦ-Σ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i>	ρΠΦ-Σ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	σηΠΦ-ΡΤ::
<i>Constructive,</i>	λΠΦ-ΣΤ:		

F. G. SIXTH AND SEVENTH CONJUGATIONS.

*Intensive Forms.***τΦΦ-σο:** and **τΦΦσο::** To resist to the end.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ρΦΦ-σο: and	<i>Imperative,</i>	τΦΦ-σο: & τΦΦσο:
	ρΦΦσο:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	σηΦΦ-σο: and
<i>Constructive,</i>	τΦΦ-σο:		σηΦΦσο:

IV. FOURTH CLASS.—*Doubly Imperfect Biliterals.*

These are subdivided into three species :

(aa) Verbs doubly contracted.

(bb) Verbs beginning with **Ḫ**: and terminating in an absorbed guttural.

(cc) Beginning with **P**: which absorbs a guttural.

(aa) *Doubly Contracted Biliterals.*

These are but few in number ; derived from Quadrilaterals, and flexible through three Conjugations.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION. *

Intransitive. (Active) Voice.

ḪA: He was loose, lax.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc.	ḪA: he was lax.	ḪA: they were lax.
.... fem.	ḪA: she was lax.	
.... masc.	ḪA: fem. ḪA:	ḪA:
.... hon. 1.	ḪA: 2. ḪA:	
1st.. com.	ḪA:	ḪA:

Present and Future.

3d p. masc.	ḪA: he is lax.	ḪA: they are lax.
.... fem.	ḪA: she is lax.	
2d.. masc.	ḪA:	ḪA:
.... fem.	ḪA:	
.... hon. 1.	ḪA:	
.... 2.	ḪA:	
1st.. com.	ḪA:	ḪA:

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc.	ḪA: fem. ḪA:	ḪA:
2d ..	ḪA: .. ḪA:	ḪA:
.... hon. 1.	ḪA: 2. ḪA:	ḪA:
1st.. com.	ḪA:	ḪA:

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.—None.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **ΛΔΤΦ:** he being lax.
 fem. **ΛΔΤΓ:** she being lax.
 2d ... masc. **ΛΔΤΣ:**
 fem. **ΛΔΤΠ:**
 hon. 1. **ΛΔΤΦ:**
 2. **ΛΔΤΦΣ:**
 1st.. com. **ΛΔΤ:**

ΛΔΤΦ:
ΛΔΤΦΣ:
ΛΔΤ:

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. **ΛΔ:** fem. **ΛΓ:** be lax. | **ΛΔ:** do ye be lax.

6. INFINITIVE.

ΜΑΛΛΑΤ: to be loose, lax.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.

Rel. Pret. **ΡΛΛ:** he who was lax.

Pres. **ΡΜΨΛΛ:** he who is lax.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active, Transitive Voice.

ΛΛΛ: To loosen, relax.

Contingent, **ΡΛΛ:**

Imperative, **ΛΛΛ:**

Constructive, **ΛΛΔΤΦ:**

Infinitive, **ΜΑΛΛΑΤ::**

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

Passive Reflective Voice.

ΤΖ.Ζ.: Was pitied.

Contingent, **ΡΖ.Ζ.:**

Imperative, **ΤΖ.Ζ.:**

Constructive, **ΤΖ.Ζ.ΤΦ:**

Infinitive, **ΜΑΖ.Ζ.Τ:**

(bb) *Biliterals beginning with Ζ: and terminating in an Absorbed Guttural.*

They are but few, and have only Three Conjugations. They have the Paragogic Τ:

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive, Active Voice.***ՀՊ:** He wanted, had not.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. m. **ՀՊ:** he wanted.**ՀՊՆ:** they wanted.... f. **ՀՊՒ:** she wanted.2d .. m. **ՀՊՍ:** fem. **ՀՊՌ:****ՀՊԴՍ:**.. hon. 1. **ՀՊՐ:** 2. **ՀՊԴՍ:**1st com. **ՀՊՄ:****ՀՊՆ::**

3d pers. masc.

*Present, and Future.***ՔՊՃ:** he wants. fem. **ՔՊՂԻՒ:** | **ՔՊՃ:** they want.

2. CONTINGENT.

ՔՊ: fem. **ՔՊ:**| **ՔՊ:**

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ՔՊ: fem. **ՔՊ:**| **ՔՊ::**

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

ՀՊԴ: he wanting. fem. **ՀՊԴ:** | **ՀՊԴՈ:** they wanting.

5. IMPERATIVE.

ՀՊ: fem. **ՀՊ:** do thou want. | **ՀՊ:** do ye want.

6. INFINITIVE.

ՍՊՊԴ: To want, the wanting, want.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, None.*Rel. Pret.* **ՔՊ:** he who wanted.*Pres.* **ՔՍՊ.ՔՊ::** he who wants.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Passive, Intransitive Voice.***ՔՊ:** To be wanted.*Contingent,* **ՔԴՊ::***Imperative,* **ՔՊ::***Constructive,* **ՔԴՊ::***Infinitive,* **ՍՊՔԴՊ::**

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Transitive, Causative Voice.***ՀՈՂ:** To deprive.*Contingent,* ՔՈՂ: *Imperative,* ՀՈՂ:*Subjunctive,* ՔՈՂ: *Infinitive,* ԹՈՂՈՒ:*Constructive,* ՀՈՂՔԻ:(cc) *Verb beginning with P: which absorbs a Guttural.*

Only one Verb has been discovered to belong to this class.

ՔԻ: Eth. ՀԿԻ: To seize.The **P:** is shortened into **Q:** and even reduced to the mere vowel **i.**

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***ՔԻ:** He seized.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

3d p. m. ՔԻ: he seized.

... f. ՔԻՒ: she seized.

2d ... m. ՔԻՍ: fem. ՔԻՌ:.

.. hon. 1. ՔԻ: 2. ՔԻՒՄ:.

1st com. ՔԻՄ:.

PLURAL.

ՔԻ: they seized.

ՔԻՒՄ:.

ՔԻՇ:.

Present and Future.

3d p. m. { ՔԻԱ: & } ՔԻԿԱ: he seizes.

... f. { ՏԿԼՔ: & } ՏՔԿԼՔ: she seizes.

2d ... m. ՏԿԼՍ: & ՏՔԿԼՍ:.

... f. ՏԿԼՌ: & ՏՔԿԼՌ:.

.. hon. 1. ՔԻԱ: and ՔԻԿԱ:.

... 2. { ՏԿԼՔՄ: & } ՏՔԿԼՔՄ:.

1st com. ՀԿԼՍ: & ՀՔԿԼՍ: ՀՀԿԼՑ: and ՀՀՔԿԼՑ:.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. m. ՔԻ:

... f. ՏԿ: and ՏՔԿ:.

2d ... m. ՏԿ: and ՏՔԿ:.

... f. ՏԿ: and ՏՔԿ:.

.. hon. 1. ՔԻ: 2. ՏԿ: & ՏՔԿ:.

1st com. ՀԿ: and ՀՔԿ:.

ՔԻ:

ՏԿ: and ՏՔԿ:.

ՀԿ: and ՀՔԿ:.

ՀՀԿ: and ՀՀՔԿ:.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. m.	ΡΗ: may he seize.	ΡΗ: may they seize.
... f.	ΤΡΗ: may she seize.	
2d .. m.	ΤΡΗ: fem. ΤΡΗ:	ΤΡΗ:
.. hon. 1.	ΡΗ: 2. ΤΡΗ:	
1st com.	ΧΡΗ:	ΧΩΡΗ::

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. m.	ΕΗ: he seizing.	ΕΗΩ: they seizing.
... f.	ΕΗ: she seizing.	
2d .. m.	ΕΗΩ: fem. ΕΗΩ:	ΕΗΤΩ:
.. hon. 1.	ΕΗΩ: 2. ΕΗΤΩ:	
1st com.	ΕΗ:	ΕΗΣ::

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc.	ΡΗ:	do thou seize.	ΡΗ: do ye seize.
Fem.	ΡΗ:	}	

6. INFINITIVE.

ΩΝΡΗ: to seize, the seizing, seizure.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple. **ΡΗ:** a seizer. *Rel. Pret.* **ΡΡΗ:** he who seized.

Present.

SINGULAR.

3d p. masc.	ΡΩΝΗ: and ΡΩΝΩΝΗ:	he who seizes.
... f.	ΡΩΝΤΡΗ: and ΡΩΝΤΩΝΗ:	she who seizes.
2d .. m.	ΡΩΝΤΗ: and ΡΩΝΤΩΝΗ:	{ thou who seizest.
... f.	ΡΩΝΤΗ: and ΡΩΝΤΩΝΗ:	{ you who seize.
... hon. 1.	ΡΩΝΗ: and ΡΩΝΩΝΗ:	{ you who seize.
... com.	ΡΩΝΗ: I who seize.	

PLURAL.

ΡΩΝΗ: and **ΡΩΝΩΝΗ:** they who seize.

ΡΩΝΤΗ: and **ΡΩΝΤΩΝΗ:** you who seize.

ΡΩΝΩΝΗ: and **ΡΩΝΩΝΩΝΗ:** we who seize.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Transitive and Causative Voice.***ΧΡΗ:** He caused to seize.

<i>Contingent,</i> ΧΡΗ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ΧΡΗ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ΧΡΗ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ΟΨΡΗ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ΧΡΗ:	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ΤΡΗ:** He was seized.

<i>Contingent,</i> ΤΡΗ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ΤΡΗ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ΤΡΗ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ΟΩΡΗ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***ΧΠΡΗ:** He caused to be seized, betrayed.

<i>Contingent,</i> ΧΠΗ: and ΧΠΡΗ::	<i>Imperative,</i> ΧΠΡΗ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ΧΠΡΗ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ΟΨΠΡΗ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ΧΠΗ: and ΧΠΡΗ::	

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Active and Passive, Frequentative and Reciprocatice.***ΤΡΡΗ:** He frequently, alternately, reciprocally, completely, seized, or was seized.

<i>Contingent,</i> ΤΡΡΗ::	<i>Imperative,</i> ΤΡΡΗ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ΤΡΡΗ::	<i>Infinitive,</i> ΟΩΡΡΗ::

4. *Various Conjugations of Quadrilateral and Pluriliteral Verbs.*I. FIRST CLASS.—*Reduplicated and Transposed Biliterals.*

This numerous class has Eleven Conjugations. (See pp. 56—60.)

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Active Voice.***ΛΟΣΛΟΣ:** It was green. **ΦΙΦΙ:** He beat.

<i>Contingent,</i> ΛΛΟΣΛΟΣ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ΛΦΙΛΦΙ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ΛΛΦΙΛΦΙ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ΟΩΛΦΙΛΦΙ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ΛΦΙΛΦΙ:	

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active, Transitive Voice.***ՀԼՊԱՓՅ:** He made green, verdant, refreshed.*Contingent, ՔԼՍՍՃԹ:**Imperative, ՀԼՊԱՓԹ:**Subjunctive, ՔԼՊԱՓԹ:**Infinitive, ՄՎԼՊԱՓՅ::**Constructive, ՀԼՊԱՓՊՅ:*

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ՏԼՓՃՓ:** He was bedaubed.*Contingent, ՔԼՓՃՓ:**Imperative, ՏԼՓՃՓ:**Constructive, ՏԼՓՃՃՓ:**Infinitive, ՄՎԼՓՃՓ:*

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely-Active Voice.***ՀԼՓԻՓ:** He shook.*Contingent, ՔԼՓԻՓ:**Imperative, ՀԼՓԻՓ:**Subjunctive, ՔԼՓԻՓ:**Infinitive, ՄՎԼՓԻՓ::**Constructive, ՀԼՓԻՓ:*

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely-Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive Voice.***ՏԼՓՃՓ:** He bedaubed, washed himself.*Contingent, ՔԼՓՃՓ:**Imperative, ՏԼՓՃՓ:**Constructive, ՏԼՓՃՃՓ:**Infinitive, ՄՎԼՓՃՓ::*

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative, Transitive Voice.***ՀՈԽՓՃՓ:** He caused bedaubing. (**ՀՈՒԽՃԻՇ:** He moved, crept.)*Contingent, ՔՈԽՓՃՓ:**Imperative, ՀՈԽՓՃՓ:**Subjunctive, ՔՈԽՓՃՓ:**Infinitive, ՄՎՈԽՓՃՓ::**Constructive, ՀՈԽՓՃՃՓ:*

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***ՀՅՈՃՈՅ:** He beat, shook.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔՅՈՃՈՅ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ՀՅՈՃՈՅ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ՔՅՈՃՈՅ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՊՅՈՃՈՅ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ՀՅՈՃՈՅ:	

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive and Intransitive Voice.***ԴՅՓԹՓԹ:** He trembled.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔՅՓԹՓԹ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ԴՅՓԹՓԹ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ԴՅՓԹՓԹ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՊՅՓԹՓԹ::

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive and Active Voice.***ՀՅՓՌՓՌ:** He stirred up, moved.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔՅՓՌՓՌ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ՀՅՓՌՓՌ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ՀՅՓՌՓՌ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՊՅՓՌՓՌ::

K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive, Reflective, and Intransitive Voice.***ԴՅՓՌՓՌ:** He was stirred, He moved.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔՅՓՌՓՌ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ԴՅՓՌՓՌ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ԴՅՓՌՓՌ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՊՅՓՌՓՌ::

L. ELEVENTH COJUGATION.

*Causative, Transitive Voice.***ՀՈԴՓՌՓՌ:** He stirred, moved.

<i>Contingent,</i> ՔՈԴՓՌՓՌ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ՀՈԴՓՌՓՌ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ՔՈԴՓՌՓՌ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ՄՊՈԴՓՌՓՌ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ՀՈԴՓՌՓՌ:	

II. SECOND CLASS.—*Derivates from Triliterals, having one Radical Reduplicated and Transposed.*

This class is not numerous, and it has Six Conjugations.

A. FIRST COJUGATION.

Intransitive Voice.

፩፻፻፻፻: He was blunt.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc.	፩፻፻፻፻:	he was blunt.	፩፻፻፻፻፻፻:	they were blunt.
.... fem.	፩፻፻፻፻፻:			
2d .. masc.	፩፻፻፻፻፻:		፩፻፻፻፻፻፻:	
.... fem.	፩፻፻፻፻፻:			
.... hon. 1.	፩፻፻፻፻:			
.... hon. 2.	፩፻፻፻፻፻:			
1st.. com.	፩፻፻፻፻:		፩፻፻፻፻:	

Present and Future.

፩፻፻፻፻፻: he is blunt. | **፩፻፻፻፻፻፻:** they are blunt.

2. CONTINGENT.

፩፻፻፻፻፻: fem. | **፩፻፻፻፻፻:** | **፩፻፻፻፻፻:**

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

፩፻፻፻፻፻፻: he being blunt. | **፩፻፻፻፻፻፻፻:**

5. NO IMPERATIVE.

6. INFINITIVE.

መ፩፻፻፻፻፻: to be blunt, the being blunt, bluntness.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Rel. Pret. **፩፻፻፻፻፻:** he who was blunt.

Pres. **የሙ፩፻፻፻፻:** he who is blunt.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

Active, Transitive, and Intransitive Voice.

አ፩፻፻፻፻: He blunted. | **አን፻፻፻፻፻:** He murmured.

Contingent, **የን፻፻፻፻፻:** | *Imperative,* **አን፻፻፻፻፻:**

Subjunctive, **የን፻፻፻፻፻፻:** | *Infinitive,* **ማን፻፻፻፻፻:**

Constructive, **አን፻፻፻፻፻፻:**

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተደለዋው:** Was blunted.*Contingent, የደለዋው:* | *Imperative, ተደለዋው:**Constructive, ተደለዋውታ:* | *Infinitive, መደለዋውታ::*

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***አከፍዎ፣** He gave success.*Contingent, የከፍዎ፣* | *Imperative, አከፍዎ፣**Subjunctive, የከፍዎ፣* | *Infinitive, መከፍዎ፣**Constructive, አከፍዎታ፣*

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Intensive Voice.***ተከፍዎ፣** He had success, succeeded, prospered.*Contingent, የከፍዎ፣* | *Imperative, ተከፍዎ፣**Constructive, አከፍዎታ፣* | *Infinitive, መከፍዎ፣*

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive Voice.***ተንገረባ፣** It became knotty.*Contingent, የንገረባ፣* | *Imperative, ተንገረባ፣**Constructive, ተንገረባ፣* | *Infinitive, መንገረባ::*

III. THIRD CLASS.

Geminants, probably derived from Triliterals, but having their original verb lost, so as not to be reckoned to the geminating Conjugation of the Trilateral Regular Verb. This class is but small—is inflected through six conjugations, similar to other Geminants.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive.***՚-ՌՈՂԱ:** He escaped.

<i>Contingent,</i>	քՌ-ՌՈՂԱ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	՚-ՌՈՂԱ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i>	քՌ-ՌՈՂԱ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՎՌ-ՌՈՂԱ::
<i>Constructive,</i>	՚-ՌՈՂԱ:		

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***՚-ՔԾՈՒՐԻ:** He was destroyed.

<i>Contingent,</i>	քՔԾՈՒՐԻ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	՚-ՔԾՈՒՐԻ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	՚-ՔԾՈՒՐԻ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՎՔԾՈՒՐԻ::

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive and Intensive Voice.***՚-ՄՊՈՂԱ:** Walked nimbly, affectedly, proudly.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ք՚-ՄՊՈՂԱ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	՚-ՄՊՈՂԱ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	՚-ՄՊՈՂԱ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՎ՚-ՄՊՈՂԱ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Transitive Voice.***ՀՈՒԹՎՓ:** He cautioned.

<i>Contingent,</i>	քՀՈՒԹՎՓ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ՀՈՒԹՎՓ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i>	քՀՈՒԹՎՓ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՎՀՈՒԹՎՓ::
<i>Constructive,</i>	ՀՈՒԹՎՓ:		

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Active Voice.***ՀՅՈՒՐԱՂԱ:** He rolled about.

<i>Contingent,</i>	քՀՅՈՒՐԱՂԱ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	ՀՅՈՒՐԱՂԱ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	ՀՅՈՒՐԱՂԱ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՎՀՅՈՒՐԱՂԱ::

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***՚-ՀՅՈՒՐԱՂԱ:** He was rolled about.

<i>Contingent,</i>	ք՚-ՀՅՈՒՐԱՂԱ:	<i>Imperative,</i>	՚-ՀՅՈՒՐԱՂԱ:
<i>Constructive,</i>	՚-ՀՅՈՒՐԱՂԱ:	<i>Infinitive,</i>	ՄՎ՚-ՀՅՈՒՐԱՂԱ::

IV. FOURTH CLASS.

Quadrilaterals and Plurilaterals of different Radicals.

A. FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Intransitive Voice.***መሰንኩ:** Was glorious.

<i>Contingent,</i> ደመሰንኩ:	<i>Imperative,</i> መሰንኩ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ደመሰንኩ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መመሰንኩ::
<i>Constructive,</i> መሰንኩ:	

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Active and Transitive Voice.***አመሰንኩ:** He glorified.

<i>Contingent,</i> ደመሰንኩ:	<i>Imperative,</i> አመሰንኩ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ደመሰንኩ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መማመሰንኩ::
<i>Constructive,</i> አመሰንኩ:	

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Passive Voice.***ተመሰንኩ:** He was glorified.

<i>Contingent,</i> ደመሰንኩ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ቴመሰንኩ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ቴመሰንኩ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መመመሰንኩ::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***እሰናበት:** He dismissed.

<i>Contingent,</i> ደሰናበት:	<i>Imperative,</i> እሰናበት:
<i>Constructive,</i> እሰናበት:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መማሰናበት::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive and Passive Voice.***ተሰናበት:** He was dismissed.

<i>Contingent,</i> ደሰናበት:	<i>Imperative,</i> ቴሰናበት:
<i>Constructive,</i> ቴሰናበት:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መመሰናበት::

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

*Causative Voice.***አስመጥኑ:** He causes to be glorious or glorified.

<i>Contingent,</i> የስመጥና:	<i>Imperative,</i> አስመጥና:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> የስመጥና:	<i>Infinitive,</i> ማስመጥና:
<i>Constructive,</i> አስመጥና:	

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensive Voice.***ገለግበዕ:** He overthrew completely.

<i>Contingent,</i> ያገለግበዕ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ገለግበዕ:
<i>Subjunctive,</i> ያገለግበዕ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መገለግበዕ::
<i>Constructive,</i> ገለግበዕ:	

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

*Intensely Passive Voice.***ተገለግበዕ:** He was completely overthrown.

<i>Contingent,</i> ያተገለግበዕ:	<i>Imperative,</i> ተገለግበዕ:
<i>Constructive,</i> ተገለግበዕ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መጠገለግበዕ::

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

*Reciprocal and Reiterative Voice.***ተሰፍባዕት:** Took leave from each other.

<i>Contingent,</i> ያተሰፍባዕት:	<i>Imperative,</i> ተሰፍባዕት:
<i>Constructive,</i> ተሰፍባዕት:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መሰፍባዕት::

5. *Defective and Anomalous Verbs..*

Three of them—viz. I. The Auxiliary **እል:** “He is”; II. **ነበረ:** “He was”; III. **ነው:** “He is,”—have been conjugated before we entered upon the Regular Trilateral Verb. (See pp. 64, 65.) We proceed to give here the rest.

IV. *Various Conjugations of the Verb እል:* “He said.”

The irregularities in this verb are caused by the mixing together of the two forms **እል:** and **ነል:** Eth. **ነህል:** “To say.” This verb has Ten Conjugations.

4. FIRST CONJUGATION.

Active Voice.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. እስ፡ he said. እስ፡ they said.

... fem. እለች፡ she said.

2d.. masc. እልሁ፡ fem. እልሽ፡

እለችሁ፡

... hon. 1. እስ፡ 2. እለችሁ፡

1st.. com. እልሁ፡

እል፤

Present and Future.

3d p. masc. ይለል፡ he says. ይለል፡ they say.

... fem. ተለለች፡ she says.

2d.. masc. ተለለሁ፡ f. ተያለሽ፡

ቴለለችሁ፡

... hon. 1. ይለል፡ 2. ተለለችሁ፡

1st.. com. እለለሁ፡

እንለለን፤

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. ይል፡ and ይበል፡

የል፡ and ይበል፡

... fem. ተል፡ and ተበል፡

ተል፡ and ተበል፡

2d.. masc. ተል፡ and ተበል፡

... fem. ተይ፡ and ተበይ፡

... hon. 1. ይል፡ and ይበል፡

... 2. ተል፡ and ተበል፡

1st.. com. እል፡ and እበል፡

እንል፡ and እንበል፡

3. NO SUBJUNCTIVE.

4. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. ተል፡ he saying.

ተልዎ፡

... fem. ተል፡ she saying.

ተልችሁ፡

2d.. masc. ተልሁ፡ fem. ተልሽ፡

ተልችሁ፡

... hon. 1. ተልዎ፡ 2. ተልችሁ፡

ተልን፡

1st.. com. ተይ፡

5. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. ተል፡ } do thou say.
Fem. ተይ፡ }

የል፡ do ye say.

6. INFINITIVE.

ማለት፡ To say, the saying, meaning, intention.

7. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, **ՊՐ**: one who says.

Rel. Pret. **ՔԱ**: he who said.

Pres. **ԲՈՎԱ**: he who says.

B. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ՀՈՂ: To deceive by talking.

Contingent, **ՔՈՂ**: | *Imperative*, **Հ-ՈՂ**:

Constructive, **Հ-ՈՂՈՒ**: | *Infinitive*, **ՄՊՈՂ**::

C. THIRD CONJUGATION.

ԴՂԱ: *pass.* To be said, called, named.

1. PRETERITE.

SINGULAR.

3d p. m. **ԴՂԱ**: he was called. | **ԴՂՈՐ**: they were called.

... f. **ԴՂՈՐՔ**: she was called.

2d .. m. **ԴՂԵՍ**: f. **ԴՂԵՐԻ**:

.. hon. i. **ԴՂՐ**: 2. **ԴՂԵՐՄ**:

1st com. **ԴՂԵՍ**:

PLURAL.

ԴՂԵՐՄ:

ԴՂԵՐՆ:

Present and Future.

3d p. m. **ԶՂԱԾ**: he is called. | **ԶՂԱԾՈՐ**: they are called.

... f. **ԴՂԵՐՈՔ**: she is called.

Contingent, **ԶՂԱ**:

Constructive, **ԴՂՈՐ**:

Imperative, none.

Infinitive, **ՄՊՂ**::

D. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ՖՈՂ: *pass.* from **ՀՈՂ**: To be deceived.

Contingent, **ՔՖՈՂ**: | *Imperative*, **ՖՈՂ**:

Constructive, **Ֆ-ՈՂՈՒ**: | *Infinitive*, **ՄՊՖՈՂ**::

E. FIFTH CONJUGATION.

ԴՂԱ: To rumour in public.

Whether any more than the Preterite Indicative is extant of this form, we do not know.

F. SIXTH CONJUGATION.

አግብል: He persuaded.

<i>Contingent,</i> የግብል:	<i>Imperative,</i> አግብል:
<i>Constructive,</i> አግብለ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መግብል::

G. SEVENTH CONJUGATION.

ተግበል: To be persuaded, to say to each other.

<i>Contingent,</i> ያግበል:	<i>Imperative,</i> ቴግበል:
<i>Constructive,</i> ቴግበለ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መግበል::

H. EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

ተግባል: *recipr.* To say to each other.

<i>Contingent,</i> ያግባል:	<i>Imperative,</i> ቴግባል:
<i>Constructive,</i> ቴግባለ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መግባል::

I. NINTH CONJUGATION.

ታላል: He was talked into any thing, was persuaded, duped.

<i>Contingent,</i> ያታላል:	<i>Imperative,</i> ተላል:
<i>Constructive,</i> ተላለ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መታላል::

K. TENTH CONJUGATION.

እታላል: He persuaded, cheated.

<i>Contingent,</i> ያታላል:	<i>Imperative,</i> እታልል:
<i>Constructive,</i> እታለ:	<i>Infinitive,</i> መታላል::

V. First Conjugation of the Verb **አነስ**: "To be equal," "amount to."

The remainder of this verb, **ተኩስለ**: and **እስተኩስለ**: is regular. The anomaly of the First Conjugation consists in its assuming more of the form **አኩስ**: or **እሱስ**: than of **አነስ**:, and in its not having all the Moods and Tenses. We give here all that is, as far as we know, extant.

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite, none.*Present and Future.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. ያህስ : he is equal,	ያህስለ :

The other Persons are wanting.

2. CONTINGENT.

3d Person Masculine, **የዕላ**: Feminine, **ቃዕላ**:

These two personal forms only are used with the signification, "Amounting to," "equal to;" e.g. **የመሳስመውን፡ የዕላ**: "equal to what he gives."

SUBJUNCTIVE, CONSTRUCTIVE, and IMPERATIVE—none.

INFINITIVE, **መካናል**: i.q. **መተካናል**: and **መካናል**: "the middle."

PARTICIPLES—Eth. **ሻነል**: "equal," "half."

Rel. Pres. **የመያዕላ**: "what is equal to," "amounts to, about, almost"; e.g. **ገኘት፡ ተህ፡ የመያዕላ**: "amounting to (about) three thousand."

VI. *Negative Verb* **አለ**: "Is not."

All that exists of this verb is this: **አለ**: "it (he) is not." fem. **አለች**: Participle, **የአለ**: fem. **የአለች**: "that which is not," "has not," "is without;" "without," "besides," "exclusively," "not including."

VII. Of the verb **አዋ**: (Eth. **አዕዋ**): "To be greater," "larger," "excel;" in the First Conjugation, nothing is extant but the 3d pers. masc. Conting. **ያአዋ**: which is used as a sort of Comparative, "more," "greater," "especially"; and Participle, **የመአዋ**: **የምጥልዋ**: "he, she, or it, who (which) is greater," "superior," "excels."

The Transitive form of this verb **አላዋ**: "he raised," "made excellent," is quite regular.

VIII. Verb **መጠ**: "He came," is, in its First Conjugation, destitute of an Imperative; whilst all the rest is regular and perfect. The Imperative is supplied by the form **፩**: Eth. and Tigr. **ች፩**: Sing. masc. **፩**: fem. **፩**: and **ች፩**: "do thou come." Pl. **፩**: "do ye come." Only in very rare instances they use a regular form **ማጠ**: **ማጠ**: **ማጠ**:; but it is against the custom.

IX. **ተወ**: "He left," "omitted," "abandoned," "left off."

1. INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR. *Preterite.* PLURAL.

3d p. masc. **ተወ**: fem. **ተወች**: **ተወ**:

2d .. masc. **ተወ-ህ**: fem. **ተወ-ኝ**: **ተወች-ህ**:

... hon. 1. **ተወ**: 2. **ተወች-ህ**: **ተወች-ህ**:

1st.. com. **ተወ-ህ**: **ተወ-ኝ**:

SINGULAR. *Present and Future.* PLURAL.

3d p. masc. **ՔՏՓՃ:** he abandons. | **ՔՏՓՃ:** they abandon.

... . fem. **ԴԴՓՃ:**

2d .. masc. **ԴԴՓՃՍ:**

... . fem. **ԴԴՓՃՈ:**

(The rest is regular.)

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. **ՔԴՓ:** fem. **ԴԴՓ:** | **ՔԴՓ:**

... . masc. **ԴԴՓ:** fem. **ԴԴՔ:**

(The rest is regular.)

3. CONSTRUCTIVE.

3d p. masc. **ԴԴ:** fem. **ԴԴ:** | **ԴԴՓ:**

2d .. masc. **ԴԴՍ:** fem. **ԴԴՈ:** | **ԴԴՔՍ:**

... . hon. 1. **ԴԴՓ:** 2. **ԴԴՔՍ:**

1st.. com. **ԴԴ:** | **ԴԴ:**

4. IMPERATIVE.

masc. **ԴՓ:** fem. **ԴՔ:** | **ԴՓ::**

6. INFINITIVE. **ԾԱԴՓԴ::**7. PARTICIPLES. **ԲԴՓ::** **ԲԾՎԴՓ::**

The Transitive Conjugation of this verb, **ՀԱԴՓ:** "he caused to abandon," is analogous to the preceding; the **Փ:** being changed in the 2d Fem. Sing. of the Ind. Pres., Conting., and Imper. into **Բ:**, and rejected in the Constr.

X. *Verb Ե: and ՀԵ: "to desire," "want," "seek."*

1. INDICATIVE.

Preterite. Regular.

Present and Future.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

3d p. masc. **ԶԵՃ:** he wants. | **ԶԵՃ:** they want.

... . fem. **ԴԵՃ:** she wants.

2d .. masc. **ԴԵՃՍ:** f. **ԴԵՃՈ:**

... . hon. 1. **ԶԵՃ:** 2. **ԴԵՃՔՍ:**

1st.. com. **ՀԵՃՍ:**

ՀԵՃՆ::

2. CONTINGENT.

3d p. masc. **ԶԵ:** fem. **ԴԵ:** | **ԶԵ:**

2d .. masc. **ԴԵ:** fem. **ԴԵ:** | **ԴԵ:**

... . hon. 1. **ԶԵ:** 2. **ԴԵ:**

1st.. com. **ՀԵ:** | **ՀԵ::**

SINGULAR. 3. CONSTRUCTIVE. PLURAL.

3d p. masc. አጥ፡ he wanting.	አጥዎ፡ they wanting.
... fem. አጥ፡ she wanting.	
2d .. masc. አጥሁ፡ fem. አጥሽ፡	አጥቸ፡
... hon. 1. አጥወ፡ 2. አጥቸ፡	
1st.. com. አጥ፡	አጥኝ፡

4. IMPERATIVE.

Masc. አስ፡ } do thou seek.	አስ፡ do ye seek.
Fem. አስ፡ }	

5. INFINITIVE.

መጥቅ፡ to want, &c. the want, desire, request.

6. PARTICIPLES.

Simple, none. Perfect, የጥ፡ he who wanted.

Present, የጥኝ፡ he who wants.

The Transitive form of this verb, አስ፡ is only used impersonally, in the 3d person singular masc. and fem., with the signification, "to be requisite," or, in the mind of an Abyssinian, "to produce a feeling of want by absence"; e.g. አያጥኝም፡ "I do not want (it)." The forms used are these:

Preterite, አስ፡	Contingent, የስ፡
Present, የስል፡	Infinitive, መጥቅ፡

XI. Of the verb የልጥ፡ which is negative to the verb አል፡ "He is," nothing is extant but the 3d person singular masc. የልጥም፡ "he (it) is not," fem. የልጥኩም፡ "she (it) is not," and plural የልጥም፡ "they are not." With Suffixes, it signifies "has (have) not," e.g. የልጥጥም፡ "he has not." የልጥኩም፡ "she has not." የልጥም፡ "we have not," &c.

XII. The negative አይደለም፡ "Is not," is the negative answering the substantive verb እስ፡ "He is." Whence it is derived, we know not. It is used only in the Preterite of the Indicative and Participle, which we give here.

INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	Preterite.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. አይደለም፡ he is not.		አይደለም፡ they are not.
... fem. አይደለቸም፡		
2d .. masc. አይደለህም፡		አይደለቸ-ም፡
... fem. አይደለሽም፡		
... hon. 1. አይደለም፡		
... ... 2. አይደለቸ-ም፡		
1st.. com. አይደለም፡		አይደለኝም፡

Relative Participle Preterite.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
3d p. masc. የያኝነ : he who is not.	የያኝነ : they who are not.
... fem. የያኝነች :	
2d.. masc. የያኝነህ :	የያኝነቻ :
... fem. የያኝነሽ :	
... hon. 1. የያኝነ :	
... 2. የያኝነቸ :	
1st.. com. የያኝነሁ :	የያኝነዴ :
አያኝነም : also is used for the Adverb of Negation, "No."	

SECTION V.

On the Connexion of Pronouns with Verbs.

1. In other languages, this subject would be referred to the Syntax; but in the Semitic family, the Pronouns governed by Verbs are so closely joined to them, that it would be improper to do so, as the form of the verb is modified in no slight degree by this combination. We conceive it to be here the best place for exhibiting the mode in which it is performed, after having explained all the other processes to which the Amharic Verbs are subjected.

2. Before we entered on the consideration of the Verb, in the preceding Chapter, Sect. VIII. we mentioned those Pronouns which are joined to Verbs. We now give a brief statement of the regulations under which they are joined.

(a) All the forms of Verbs assume the Verbal Suffixes, except the two nominal forms, the Infinitive and the Simple Participle, which assume Nominal Suffixes; e.g. **እርጥን**: **ሙበበ**: "my keeping him." **ጋብ**: **ማርን**: **ተሰከበ**: "his armour-bearer."

(b) All the forms which assume the Verbal Suffixes do receive them at the end, except the two forms which are inflected with the Auxiliary **ክለ**: i.e. the Present and Future Indicative, and the Aorist of the Constructive Mood; which place the Pronoun between the radical letters and the Auxiliary, so as to render it rather an Infix than a Suffix.

(c) With regard to the different degrees of power the Suffixes possess, of changing the letter to which they are joined, they are divided into light (*levia*) and heavy (*gravia*) Suffixes. The light Suffixes are those which are not preceded by a long ā: those which are preceded by a long ā are heavy Suffixes.

(d) The *light Suffixes* attach themselves to *ultimæ radicæ* of the first order, without change; and to ult. rad. of the sixth order, by converting the latter into the first order, sometimes without change. The heavy suffixes convert ult. rad., in either of those two orders, into the fourth order.

(e) Ultima radicalis of the second and of the seventh order, in accordance with Part I. Ch. VII. 5 & 6.

a. changes **Ω:** into **Ἄ::**

β. is changed, if it is a guttural or palatine, into a diphthong of the fourth order: if not, the vowel is detached from the consonant; the latter being put into the sixth, and the former becoming **Ψ:** of the fourth order, before all the heavy suffixes. Before suffix 2d pers. hon. 1., it is either left unchanged, or changed into the sixth order, leaving the suffix as it is.

(f) Ult. rad. of the third and of the fifth order changes none of the light suffixes; but agreeably to Part I. Ch. VII. 4. D., when being attached to the heavy suffixes, it is generally changed into the sixth order; and **Ρ:** is added, to assume the long *ā* of the suffix.

(g) Ult. rad. of the fourth order neither suffers nor produces any change.

(h) With regard to the *insertion* or *infusion* of Pronouns, only this needs to be observed; that **Χ:** of the Auxiliary **ΧΑ:** being absorbed by the Pronoun, the latter, or, if it consists of more than one letter, its last letter, is put into the fourth order, **Ι:** being changed into **Ἄ:** or **Ἄ::**

These rules are illustrated by the following Table:

TABLE OF A VERB WITH SUFFIXES.

στηπ: He has fed.

1. SIMPLE FORMS.

A. *Preterite.*

Masculine.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

Feminine.

στηπχ: he has fed me.

στηπχά: she has fed me.

στηπψ: he has fed thee (*m.*).

στηπχψ: she has fed thee (*m.*).

στηπχῆ: he has fed thee (*f.*).

στηπχῆψ: she has fed thee (*f.*).

στηπχφ: he has fed you (hon. 1.).

στηπχψφ: she has fed you (h.1).

στηπχτψ: he has fed you (hon. 2.).

στηπχτψφ: she has fed you (h.2).

στηπχθ: he has fed him.

στηπχθψ: she has fed him.

στηπχτ: he has fed her.

στηπχτψ: she has fed her.

στηπχτ: he has fed us.
PL.

στηπχτψ: she has fed us.

στηπχτψ: he has fed you.

στηπχτψφ: she has fed you.

στηπχτψθ: he has fed them.

στηπχτψθψ: she has fed them.

Masculine.	SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.	Feminine.
ՍՈՂ-ՌԱՇ:	thou hast fed me.	ՍՈՂ-ՌԱՇ: thou (f.) hast fed me.
ՍՈՂ-ՌԱՓ:	thou hast fed him.	ՍՈՂ-ՌԱՓ: thou (f.) hast fed him.
ՍՈՂ-ՌՎԴ:	thou hast fed her.	ՍՈՂ-ՌՎԴ: thou (f.) hast fed her.
ՍՈՂ-ՌԱՆ:	thou hast fed us. PL.	ՍՈՂ-ՌԱՆ: thou hast fed us. PL.
ՍՈՂ-ՌՎԴՓ:	thou hast fed them.	ՍՈՂ-ՌՎԴՓ: thou hast fed them.

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR, HONORIFIC, like the Third and Second Plural.

FIRST PERSON COMMON.

ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Ս:	I have fed thee (m.)
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Ռ:	I have fed thee (f.)
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Փ:	I have fed you (hon. 1).
ՍՈՂ-ՌՎԴ-Խ-Ս:	I have fed you (hon. 2).
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Դ-Դ:	I have fed him.
ՍՈՂ-ՌՎԴ-Դ:	I have fed her. PL.
ՍՈՂ-ՌՎԴ-Խ-Ս:	I have fed you.
ՍՈՂ-ՌՎԴ-Խ-Փ:	I have fed them.

THIRD PERSON.

ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Շ:	they have fed me.
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Ս:	they have fed thee (m.)
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Ռ:	they have fed thee (f.)
ՍՈՂ-ՌՓ:	they have fed you (h.1).
ՍՈՂ-ՌՎԴ-Խ-Ս:	they have fed you (h.2).
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Դ:	they have fed him.
ՍՈՂ-ՌՎԴ-Դ:	they have fed her. PL.
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Ն:	they have fed us.
ՍՈՂ-ՌՎԴ-Խ-Ս:	they have fed you.
ՍՈՂ-ՌՎԴ-Խ-Փ:	they have fed them.

PLURAL.

SECOND PERSON.

ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Շ-Շ:	you have fed me.
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Շ-Դ:	you have fed him.
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Շ-Դ:	you have fed her.
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Շ-Ն:	you have fed us. PL.
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Շ-Խ-Փ:	you have fed them.
FIRST PERSON.	
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Ն-Ս:	we have fed thee (m.)
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Ն-Ռ:	we have fed thee (f.)
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Ն-Փ:	we have fed you (h.1).
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Ն-Խ-Ս:	we have fed you (h.2).
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Ն-Դ:	we have fed him.
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Ն-ՎԴ-Դ:	we have fed her. PL.
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Ն-Խ-Ս:	we have fed you.
ՍՈՂ-Ռ-Ն-Խ-Փ:	we have fed them.

B. *Contingent.*

Masculine.	THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.	Feminine.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՇ: let him feed me.		ԴԱՍՊՈՒՇ: let her feed me, &c. &c.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՅ: let him feed thee (m.)		quite like ՃԱՍՊՈՒՇ: &c.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՐ: let him feed thee (f.)		ՏԱՍՊՈՒՇ: like the 3d pers. fem.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒԹ: let him feed you. (h.1.)		ՏԱՍՊՈՒՅ: like the 3d pers. masc.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՖ-Ս: let him feed you. (h.2.)		ՏԱՍՊՈՒՐ: mayest thou (f.) feed me.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՓ: let him feed him.		ՏԱՍՊՈՒՈՒ: mayest thou feed him.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒԴ: let him feed her.		ՏԱՍՊՈՒՐԴ: mayest thou feed her.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՆ: let him feed us. <small>PL.</small>		ՏԱՍՊՈՒՆ: mayest thou feed us.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՖ-Ս: let him feed you.		ՏԱՍՊՈՒՐԴՈՒ: { mayest thou feed them.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՄՈՒ: let him feed them.		FIRST PERSON.
		ՃԱՍՊՈՒՅ: &c., assumes the Suf- fixes, like the 3d pers. masc.

THIRD PERSON.	PLURAL.	SECOND PERSON.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՇ: let them feed me.		ԴԱՍՊՈՒ: the same as with the 3d pers. plural.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՅ: let them feed thee.		FIRST PERSON.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՐ: let them feed thee.		ՃԱՆԱՍՊՈՒ: the same as with the 3d pers. sing.
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՓ: let them feed you. (h. 1.)		
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՓՖ-Ս: { let them feed you. (hon. 2.)		
ՃԱՍՊՈՒԴ: let them feed him.		
ՃԱՍՊՈՒԴ: let them feed her.		
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՆ: let them feed us. <small>PL.</small>		
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՓՖ-Ս: let them feed you.		
ՃԱՍՊՈՒՄՈՒ: let them feed them.		

C. The *Imperative* joins the Suffixes in the same manner as the *Contingent*.

D. *Simple Constructive.*

Masculine.	THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.	Feminine.
ԹԱՂՐԴ:	he feeding me.	ԹԱՂՐԴ: she feeding me.
ԹԱՂՐԵ:	he feeding thee.	ԹԱՂՐԵ: she feeding thee.
ԹԱՂՐԻ:	he feeding you.	ԹԱՂՐԻ: she feeding you.
ԹԱՂՐՓ:	he feeding him.	ԹԱՂՐՓ: she feeding him.
ԹԱՂՐՓՒ:	he feeding her.	ԹԱՂՐՓՒ: she feeding her.
ԹԱՂՐՆ:	he feeding us	ԹԱՂՐՆ: she feeding us.
ԹԱՂՐՓՌՍ:	he feeding you.	ԹԱՂՐՓՌՍ: she feeding you.
ԹԱՂՐՓՌՈՒ:	he feeding them.	ԹԱՂՐՓՌՈՒ: she feeding them.

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.

ԹԱՂՈԲԴ: thou feeding me. | **ԹԱՂՈԲԴ:** thou feeding me.

Assume the Suffixes like the same Persons in the Preterite.

Second Pers. Sing. honor. 3d and 2d Plural, the same as Preterite 3d and 2d Plural.

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.	FIRST PERSON PLURAL.
ԹԱՂՈՅ:	ԹԱՂՈՅՆ: we feeding them.
ԹԱՂՈՐ:	ԹԱՂՈՐՆ: we feeding you.
ԹԱՂՈՓ:	ԹԱՂՈՓՆ: (sing.)
ԹԱՂՈՓՌՍ:	ԹԱՂՈՓՌՈՒ: we feeding you. (pl.)
ԹԱՂՈՓՌՈՒ:	ԹԱՂՈՓՌՈՒ: we feeding them.

Note.—Constructive Forms with the paragogic **Դ:** differ in nothing concerning the affixion of the Pronoun.

E. The Relative Participle treats the Suffixes like the Preterite Indicative and the Contingent.

2. *Forms with the Auxiliary ՀԱ:: Infixion.*

INDICATIVE.

Present and Future.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR-MASCULINE.
(See Contingent.)

- ՀՍԾՊՈՒԴ:** he feeds me.
ՀՍԾՊՈՎԴ: } he feeds thee.
ՀՍԾՊՈՎԴ: } he feeds you.
ՀՍԾՊՈՒՇԴ: he feeds him.
ՀՍԾՊՈՒՇԴ: he feeds her.
ՀՍԾՊՈՒՇԴ: he feeds us.
ՀՍԾՊՈՒՇԴ: he feeds you.
ՀՍԾՊՈՒՇԴ: he feeds them.

- THIRD PERSON PLURAL.
ՀՍԾՊՈՒՇԴ: they feed me.
ՀՍԾՊՈՎԴ: } they feed thee.
ՀՍԾՊՈՒՇԴ: } they feed you.
ՀՍԾՊՈՒՇԴ: } they feed him.
ՀՍԾՊՈՎԴ: } they feed her.
ՀՍԾՊՈՒՇԴ: } they feed us.
ՀՍԾՊՈՎԴ: } they feed you.
ՀՍԾՊՈՎԴ: } they feed them.

3d p. Sing. Fem. { in the same manner
 2d Masc. { as the 3d pers. sing.
 1st... . . . & P. { masc. with necessary termination of
 ՀԱ::

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR FEMININE.

- ԴՄԾՊՈՒՇՈՒՌ:** thou feedest me.
ԴՄԾՊՈՎՈՒՌ: thou feedest him.
ԴՄԾՊՈՎՈՒՌ: thou feedest her.
ԴՄԾՊՈՒՌ: thou feedest us.
ԴՄԾՊՈՎՈՒՌ: thou feedest them.

SECOND PERSON PLURAL.

- ԴՄԾՊՈՒՇՈՒՄ:** &c., the same with regard to infixes as 3d p. pl.

Constructive Aorist.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

- | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Masculine. | | Feminine. |
| ՄՊՐՇԴ: | he feeds (fed &c.) me. | ՄՊՐՇՈՒՌ: she feeds me. |
| ՄՊՐԿԴ: } | he feeds (fed &c.) thee. | ՄՊՐԿՈՒՌ: } she feeds thee. |
| ՄՊՐՋԴ: } | he feeds (fed &c.) you | ՄՊՐՋՈՒՌ: } she feeds you. |
| ՄՊՐՓՇԴ: } | (s. hon.) | ՄՊՐՓՈՒՌ: } she feeds him. |
| ՄՊՐԺԴ: | he feeds (fed &c.) him. | ՄՊՐԺՈՒՌ: } she feeds her. |
| ՄՊՐՓԴ: | he feeds (fed &c.) her. | ՄՊՐԺՈՒՌ: } she feeds us. |
| ՄՊՐԲԴ: | he feeds (fed &c.) us. | ՄՊՐԲՈՒՌ: } she feeds you. |
| ՄՊՐՓՓԴ: | he feeds (fed &c.) you. | ՄՊՐԲՓՈՒՌ: } she feeds them. |
| ՄՊՐՓԴ: | he feeds (fed &c.) them. | |

Masculine.

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.

Feminine.

- ՄՊՐՈՒՇԴ:** thou feedest me, &c.

FIRST PERSON SINGULAR.

- ՄՊՐԿԱՄ:** I feed thee, &c.

SECOND PERSON PLURAL.

- ՄՊՐՖԱՄ:** you feed me.

- ՄՊՐՈՒՇԴ:** thou feedest me.

FIRST PERSON PLURAL.

- ՄՊՐԿՅԴ:** we feed thee.

THIRD PERSON PLURAL.

- ՄՊՐՈՒՇԴ:** they feed me.

Note.—The connexion of Negative as well as other Particles, Conjunctions, and Prepositions, will be noticed in the next Chapter.

CHAP. V.
ON THE ADVERBS.

1. The Amharic Adverbs are either *Separable* or *Inseparable*; and the Separable Adverbs are either *Simple* or *Compound*. The Simple Adverbs, again, are either Original or Derived. We have to consider, first, the *Simple Original* Adverbs.

2. The Simple Original Adverbs are to be subdivided into two classes; the first of which comprehends such Adverbs as express their ideas by themselves; the second, such as are usually connected with the Verbs አል: "to say," አይደለ: or አሰጥ: "to do," "to make," "to induce."

(a) *First Class.*

ሙቻ: "when?"

ስንት: "how much?" "how many?"

ቀሳ: "calmly," "cautiously," "quietly."

ብቻ: "but," "only," "singly." Is used also with Suffixes in the Accusative: **ብቻም:** "I alone." **ብቻህን:** "thou alone," &c.

ጥላ: "quickly," "speedily."

ተለንተ: and **ተለንተኩ:** "yesterday."

አማፍ: "last year."

ዘመድ: "this year."

ገዢ: "yet." With neg. "not yet."

እሁን: "now."

እንዳ:: ተንካ: Shoa, and Vulgar:

እኩ: "indeed," "even."

እንባን: "no!"

እንዳ: "but," "except," "not including."

እንዳ: "I do not know."

እወን: "yes!"

ነጥ: "thoroughly," "wholly," "fully." With negative "never," "nowhere," "not at all."

ወተር: "always."

ዘረ: "to-day," "now," "at present."

(b) *Second Class.*

PARTICLE.

ሙር: of leaping, jumping.

ምር: of bitterness.

ልግም: of carelessness, idleness, and eye-service.

ሰጠጥ: of cracking.

ሰጠና: of soaring.

ሰጥጥ: of gliding.

ቀስ: of caution, silence.

INSTANCES.

ሙር: **ደላል:** "he jumps."

ምር: **እል:** "it was bitter."

ልግም: **ደላል:** "he acts carelessly," "is an eye-servant."

ሰጠጥ: **ደላል:** "it cracks."

ሰጠና: **ደላል:** "it soars."

ሰጥጥ: **ደላል:** "he slips."

ቀስ: **ደላል:** "he acts cautiously."

ብልሸ፡ of glimmering, glittering.	ብልሸ፡ ይለል፡ "it glimmers."
ብጥን፡ of scattering.	ብጥን፡ ይለል፡ "he scatters."
ተጠ፡ of celerity.	ተጠ፡ ይለል፡ "he does quickly."
ተፅ፡ of spitting from between the lips.	ተፅ፡ እለ፡ "he spat."
ተል፡ of neglect.	ተል፡ ይለዋል፡ "he neglects him."
ሻልል፡ of shouting.	ሻልል፡ በል፡ "shout!"
ሻምበ፡ of refusing.	ሻምበ፡ እለ፡ "he refused."
ሻሽ፡ of compliance.	ሻሽ፡ ይለል፡ "he yields, "is willing."
ሻይ፡ of blowing, fanning.	ሻይ፡ በል፡ "blow," "fan."
ሻተተ፡ of fulness, completion.	ሻተተ፡ ይለል፡ "it is full," "done."
ሻይ፡ of highness, elevation.	ሻይ፡ እናደን፡ "he raised," "elevated," "made high."
ዘም፡ of silence.	ዘም፡ እስተው፡ "he silenced him."
ዘቅ፡ of lowness.	ዘቅ፡ እለ፡ "he was low," "stooped."
ዘላግ፡ of tallness, &c.	ዘላግ፡ ይለል፡ "he is tall and stout."
ደሰ፡ of joy.	ደሰ፡ እስተው፡ "he rejoiced," "pleased him."
ደወ፡ of slipperiness.	ደወ፡ እለ፡ "it was slippery."
ገመገሙ፡ of celerity.	ገመገሙ፡ እለ፡ "he went quickly."
ይ፡ of completion.	ይ፡ እለ፡ "it was full," "entire."
ይቃዬ፡ of spitting through the teeth.	ይቃዬ፡ እለ፡ "he spat thro' the teeth."
ዘጥ፡ of silence, subsiding.	ዘጥ፡ እለ፡ "it became quiet."
ፈጥዬ፡ of moving forwards.	ፈጥዬ፡ እለ፡ "he proceeded," "went further."
ይ.ገመገማ፡ of gliding.	ይ.ገመገማ፡ እናደን፡ "he made to glide."

Most of these particles seem to be originally intended for mere expressions of the natural sound of certain actions. Such is decidedly the case in በጠጥ፡ ተፅ፡ ሻቃዬ፡ ሻልል፡ የለ፡ ውድ፡ And their connexion with እለ፡ "to say," giving the idea that e.g. "to crack" is "to say *sit it*"; "to spit," is "to say *teff*" or "*tsh'ek*"; "to shout" is "to say *ellel*" (as is really the custom in the East *); "to blow" is "to say *eff*"; could lead us to rank the whole of this class rather with the Interjections, but that their connection with Verbs prohibits us, though several of these Particles are Interjections as well as Adverbs.

* See, in the Amharic Dictionary, ሻልል፡:

3. *Simple Derived Adverbs* are very numerous. They are derived from Nouns (Adjective and Substantive), and Verbs, and at least one Pronoun. Those derived from Nouns are not changed in form, but in the sense. Perhaps they may be considered as Accusatives, or having the Preposition Π: omitted. Such Nominal Adverbs are the following:

ORIGINAL SUBSTANTIVES.

σωρός: { "outside," "abroad,"
"within."

τιτζ: "to-morrow."

σηλαρχ: "early in the morning."

φρέγος: "before," "previously."

ORIGINAL ADJECTIVES.

σωλήνως: "well," "properly."

φεύπ: "near."

ηρά: "badly."

ρυμ: "well," "safely."

τληφ: "largely," "greatly."

κληρ: "much," "very."

Besides these, perhaps every other Adjective may be used adverbially.

Simple Adverbs derived from Verbs:

λεχθω: "no."

ρυπ: "nearly," "about."

ραφ: "more" (*magis*).

ρηφ: Particle of forgiveness; e.g.

ρηφ: ραφ: "he forgives."

The Simple Constructive Mood is altogether used for Adverbs; e.g.

ρηφω: { "again."

συλιθ: { "again."

σηλαρχ: "early in the morning."

φεύρ: "near."

πλη: "saying," "thinking."

ληπ: "together."

πηθη: "more."

φρέγω: "before," "previously."

ληφρέγω: { "before," "in the beginning."

τρέλη: "wanting," "but."

λεψη: "doing."

Adverbs of uncertain origin are:

πιρ: (Shoa, ηπη: and ηπητζ:) "readily," "with pleasure!"

4. Compound Adverbs are formed, (a) by Prepositions and Nouns; (b) by Prepositions and Pronouns; (c) by Nouns and Nouns; (d) by Prepositions, Nouns, and Particles.

(a) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions and Nouns.*

ՈՓՄԴ: { "internally," "within,"
"inside."

ՈՊԳԾ: { "externally," "without,"
"outside."

ՈՃՄԲ: { "well," "safely," "in

ՈՃՄՅԱՒ: { "health," "successfully"

ՈՄՓԴ: { "by little," "in a low
degree."

ՈՄՓԴ: { "by little and
little," "gradually."

ՈՃԿ: { "in a high degree," "in a
great measure."

ՈՃՑ: { "with measure," "moder-
ately."

ՈՃՀՎԴ: { "with fear," "fearfully,"
"shyly," "cowardly."

ՈՃԵՀԴ: { "boldly," "courage-
ously."

ՈՃՌԴ: "joyfully."

ՈՆՃԱՌ: { "from the heart,"
"heartily."

ՈՃՔԾ: "willingly."

ԴՆԴՄԾ: { "rationally," "reason-
ably."

ՈՎՀԿԴ: "kindly."

ՈՊՄՍՀԴ: { "graciously," "mer-
cifully."

ՈՃԴԴ: "before," "previously."

ՈՄՓԴ: "in the morning."

ՈՓԴՀ: "at noon."

ՈՊՋԴ: "in the evening."

ՈՂԴԴ: } "at night."

ՈՂՂԴԴ: } "at night."

ԻՃԸ: "from time immemorial."

ՈՎՃ: "after," "afterwards."

ՈՓՃՊ: "before."

ՈՇԴՓ: "afar off," "at a distance."

ՈՄԴԴ: "below."

ԻՄԴԴ: "from below."

ՈԽՇՃ: "from behind."

ՈՂՃ: "above."

ԻՂՃ: "from above."

ՈՊՊԾ: "entirely."

ՈՒԱԼՈՊԾ: "for ever."

ԻԽՃԴ: { "from before," "from a
former time."

ԻԽՌՃ: "from above."

ԻԽՄԴ: "from below."

(b) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions and Pronouns.*

ՈՒԾ: (Shoa, **ՈՃՍ:**) { "here,"
& **ՈՒԾ:**) } "herein."

ԻՒԾ: (Shoa, **ԻՃՍ:**) { "here,"
& **ՈՒԾ:**) } { "from here,"
"hence."

ՓՃԿԾ: { (Shoa,
ՓՃԽԾ:) } "hither."
ՈՃՍ: { & **ՍՒԾ:**) }

ՀՅՃԿԾ: } "so," "thus."

ՀՅՃՍ: "henceforth," "hence."

ՈՒԾ: (Shoa, **ՈՎ:**) { "there,"
& **ՈՒԾ:**) } "therein."

ԻՒԾ: (Shoa, **ՍՒ:**) { "there,"
"from there,"
"thence."

ՓՃԿԾ: } "thither," "after,"

ՓՃԾ: } "beyond."

ՀՈՒՒԿԾ: } "so far."

ՀՈՒՒՐԾ: } "so far."

ԻՒԾ: ՓՃԾ: "afterwards."

ԹՐՂԵՍ: ՓՃԱ:	“from henceforth.”	ՀՅՁՒ: “how?”
ՀՈՒԻԿԱԾ:	“so far,” “as far as	ՀՅՁՒ: “to be sure!”
ՀՈՒԻԿԱԾ:	“this,” “up to this.”	ՈՈՒՒՔ: “after.”
ՈՐԴ:	“where?”	ՈՄԿՅ: “why?”
ՓՃԴ:		ՈՄԿՅԸԸ: “wherefore?”
ԻՐԴ:	“whence?” “where-	ՈՈՒՈՒ: “on what ac-
ԻՈՒԾԴ:	“from?”	count?”

(c) *Adverbs formed by Nouns (Pronouns, Numerals) and Nouns.*

ՍՈՒՇ: ՍՈՒՇ:	“every day,” “daily.”	Ա-ԱՐԿԻ: { “always,” “continually,” “constantly.”
ՀԵ: ԱԵ:	“mouth to mouth,” i.e. “by word of mouth,” “vivā voce.”	ՀՅՁԳԻՒ: “once.” (See Numerals.)
ՀԵՇ: ԱԵՇ:	“opposite,” “over against each other.”	ՔՀ.ՔՑ: ՂԻ: { “then,” “at that time.”

(d) *Adverbs formed by Prepositions, Nouns, and Particles.*

ՈՀ.ՈՒԼ:	“by the head-side.”	ՈՊՀԼ: “by the foot-side.”
ՈՔՆ:	“by the hand-side.”	ՈՔՔՆ: “near the door,” &c.

5. *Inseparable Adverbs are but few.*

Հ—:	
ՀԱ—ՊԱ:	“not.”
Հ—ՊԱ:	

ՀԱ—: non—, un—, in—, &c. **ՀՊ—:** Distributive Particle.

— ՞ : Interrogative Particle.

The *Negative Particles* Հ— : ՀԱ—ՊԱ: and Հ—ՊԱ: are joined to the Finite Verb. ՀԱ—ՊԱ: is used throughout the Preterite, and with the 1st pers. sing. of the Present Tense. In the other personal forms, the Ա: is ejected, and Հ—ՊԱ: remains. The mere Հ— : is used in the Subjunctive, and in all cases where the Negative Verb receives any additional Prefixes; e.g.

PRETERITE.

- ՀՃՄՈՂՄ:** "he came not."
ՀՃՄՈՒՄ: "she came not."
ՀՃՄՈՒՄ: "thou (*m.*) camest"
ՀՃՄՈՒՄ: "thou (*f.*) not."
ՀՃՄՈՒՄ: "I came not."
ՀՃՄՈՒՄ: "they } came
ՀՃՄՈՒՄ: "you } not."
ՀՃՄՈՒՄ: "we }

SUBJUNCTIVE.

- ՀՃՄՈՒ:** "let him not come."
ՀՃՄՈՒ: "let her not come."
ՀՃՄՈՒ: "*m.* } do not thou come."
ՀՃՄՈՒ: "*f.* } do not thou come."
ՀՃՄՈՒ: "do not you (hon.)
ՀՃՄՈՒ: come."
ՀՃՄՈՒ: "I must not come."
ՀՃՄՈՒ: "let them not come."
ՀՃՄՈՒ: "do ye not come."
ՀՃՄՈՒ: "let us not come."

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

- ՀՃՄՈՂՄ:** "he } does not
ՀՃՄՈՒՄ: "she } come."
ՀՃՄՈՒՄ: "thou dost not
ՀՃՄՈՒՄ: } come."
ՀՃՄՈՂՄ: "I *
ՀՃՄՈՒՄ: "they } do not
ՀՃՄՈՒՄ: "you } come."
ՀՅՄՈՒՄ: "we }

With additional Prefixes, which absorb

the Հ::

- ՊՃԽԱԲ:** "if he do not go."
ՔՊԳԴՄՈՂՈՒ: "({thou) who does
 not return."
ՀՅՃՐՃԸ: "that thou mayest
 not do."
ՊՃՈՂ: "without (his) eating,"
 or "before he eats."
ՊՃՄՈՒ: "before I learn."

ՀՈ—: is prefixed to Infinitives; e.g. **ՀՈՍԿՈՒ:** "ignorance," i.e. the not knowing, non-intelligence. **ՀՈՍԿՈՒՆ:** "unbelief." **ՀՈՏԻՒՆ:** "disobedience," "insubordination," &c.

—**Ց:** (in Shoa —**ՓՑ:**) is a Particle of Interrogation, and affixed to any part of speech; e.g. **ՔՄՑ:** **ԿԱՑ:** "Art thou well?" **ՀԱՑՇՑ:** **ՔՄՑ:** **ՀՃՇՇ:** "Has he done this?"

CHAP. VI.

ON THE PREPOSITIONS, OR PARTICLES OF RELATION.

1. The term "Prepositions" for that part of speech which falls under the consideration of this Chapter, is not entirely suitable. It is a class which determines the relation between Nouns, Pronouns, or Verbs; and which, because in our European languages they are generally placed *before* the

* Mark the difference in pronunciation of the 1st pers. Present from the 3d pers. Preterite. The latter is pronounced "Almat'am"; the former "Alémat'am." In the 3d pers. sing. of the Preterite, the **Ա:** is mute; but in the 1st pers. sing. of the Present, it is sounded, because in the latter the Preformative **Հ:** which the **Ա:** absorbs, must be heard.

object of relation, have been called Prepositions, but would be better called *Particles of Relation*; as this term would suit also in cases where the Particle is placed behind its object.

2. The Amharic Particles of Relation are partly *Simple*, partly *Compound*. The Simple ones are always *Pre*-positions; the Compound ones consist of *Pre*- and *Post*positions. The Simple Prepositions are either Separable or Inseparable. The *Simple Separable Prepositions* are the following:

ሰለ: "for," "for the sake of," "in behalf," "instead of," "in favour of," "because," "on account of," "concerning," "on."

በደ: "to," "towards."

ምለ: "without."

እንደ: "as," "like as," "according to," "in proportion to."

እስከ: "to," "up to," "reaching to," "till," "until."

Inseparable Prepositions are, **አ—፡ በ—፡ ክ—፡ ተ—፡ ጥ—፡** or **ሁ—፡ ንብ—፡**

አ—: "to," "unto," "in favour of," "to the benefit of," "belonging to."

በ—: "in," "on," "upon," "at," "by," "through," "with," "against," "for (in exchange)," "over."

ኩ—: "of," "out of," "from," "(more) than," "to."

ቻ—: "with (company)."

ጥ—፡ or ሁ—፡ vulgar, instead of **ኩ—**; and of **በ—፡**

ሕብ—: "in proportion to," "according to," &c., and Distributive.

Illustrations of the preceding Simple Prepositions.

(a) **ሰለ**: **እግዢዕብዳር**: "For God's sake."

ሰለ: **ጃጠኬት**: **እሞታልሁ**: "I die on account (because) of my sins."

ሰለንተ: **ሙጣ**: "He came on thy account."

ሰለ: **ወደሸ፡ ይደክማል**: "He labours for (in behalf of) his friend."

ሰለ: **ምንድር**: "wherefore?"

ይህጥ፡ ፍዴራል፡ ሰለ፡ ምዴባጥ፡ ታፍጋረለጥ: "This chapter treats on faith."

(b) **እንደ**: **ሰወ፡** "as a man," "according to (the manner of) men."

እንደ: **ፈጥረስ**: "like as," or "resembling Peter."

እንደ: **ፈቀድ፡ የደረገል**: "He does according to his will," ("as he likes").

እንደ: **ንደላ**: "In proportion to his strength."

(c) **በደ**: **ሐበሻ፡ ሂደ**: "He went to Abyssinia."

ልተ፡ ወደመስ፡ እደገን: "He set his face towards him."

(d) እስከ: (sometimes እስተ:) is seldom used without a following ደረሰ:; but sometimes it is used by itself; e.g.

እስከ: ጽንደር: ይለዳል: “It goes *as far as* Gondar,” (“up to Gondar”).

(e) ሌ—: is used as a Universal Dative; e.g.

በለ: በወው: “He gave it *to me*.”

በለ: ንዑስ: “It belongs *to me*.”

ለምና: (ለምናይር:) “what *for?*” (“wherfore?”)

ለኩልች: signifies both “send *to me*,” and “send *for me*,” (in my favour, or behalf, to somebody else).

(f) በበት: “*in the house*.”

በአገሳ-እብሳር: የጥምድል: “He believes *in God*.”

በወንፈል: የስተዋሚራል: “He teaches (*in*) the Gospel.”

በጥዋት: “*in the morning*.”

በቀትር: “*at noon*.”

በወያድር: “on earth,” “on the ground.”

በደንንት: “*on a sudden*.”

በላንድ: “*at (in) London*.”

በዶች: “*at the door*.”

እድቶ: በሩይማኖት: ይድቶል: “The just shall live *by* faith.”

በባክር: በወያድር: “*By sea and by land*.”

በመሸጥተለች: በክርስቲስ፡: “*Through him that strengtheneth me; through Christ*.”

በወርቅ: በብር: ገዢዎ፡: “*With gold and with silver did he purchase it*.”

እሳቱ: መጠበቃ; “My enemy came *upon (against)* me.”

የፈረደበትል: “He judges *over him*” (or, in contrast with —ለ—: “pronounces judgment *against, condemns* him.”)

ፍቅር: በለት: በቶ: ያለዎን: “Forgive us that which is *against us*; i.e. “forgive us our debts,” Matt.vi.12.

በስራስት: ተር: ይሻውዋል: “He sells it *for six dollars*.”

ደል: ንዑስት: “He gained the victory *over him*.”

(g) ከበት: ወጣ: “He went *out of his house*.”

ነርስ: ወስደሁት: “I took it *from him*.”

ነኬ: ይበልግል: “He is greater *than I*.”

ነርስ: የንገድ: “He is inferior *to him*.”

(h, i) **՚**: and **՚**: or **Ո:** are frequently used in vulgar, but not in good language. (See the Dictionary.)

(k) **՚**—: is a Preposition, Distributive and of Proportion. It is related to **՚**: and has been mentioned already with the Numerals as a Distributive Particle. Other instances are these: **՚****ՓԽԾՈՅՔ:** “according to its kind.” **՚****ԱՐՄԱԾՈՒԹ:** “in his respective order.”

3. The Compound Particles of Relation are formed by any of the Simple Prepositions, connected with Nouns, or other Particles. The latter (Postpositions) are either directly joined to the former, or follow after the Noun or Pronoun to which they refer. We shall first give here a list of Postpositions; then show how they are combined with Simple Prepositions; and afterwards exhibit their use, by expressions of daily occurrence in conversation.

List of Postpositions.

ՈՄՄԴ: “the inside.”	ՀՅՋ: } particles of company.
ՀՂ: “what is behind.”	ԵՃ: }
ՂՔ: “high,” “upper,” “elevated.”	ՔՃՈ: particle of extent.
ՀՇԴ: “face,” “fore-part,” “surface.”	ՄՈՊԴ: “proportion.”
ՄԴ: “that which is below.”	ՃԻ: “measure.”
ՀՈՐՈ: “the side.”	ՈՓԸ: particle of omission.
ՄԵՋՈՒԱ: “the middle.”	ՀԻՐԱ: “equal,” “equality.”
Ի-ԸՐ: “surrounding place.”	ՄՈՒՀՆՔԴ: “reason,” “cause.”
ՀՅՑԸ: “front.”	ՃՐԴ: “portion,” “stead,” “part.”

They are thus combined with Simple Prepositions:

ՈՓՄՄԴ: and **Ո—:** **ՈՄՄԴ:** “within,” “inside.”

ՈՒՐԱ: “about,” “in the vicinity,” “direction.”

ՈԻ-ԸՐ: and **Ո—:** **Ի-ԸՐ:** “surrounding,” “round about.”

ՈՎԴ: “before,” “previous to,” “in sight of,” “in front of.”

ՈՎՃ: and **Ո—:** **ՈՎՃ:** “behind,” “after.”

ՈՄԴ: and **Ո—:** **ՈՄԴ:** “below,” “under.”

Ո—: **ՀՅՋ:** “by,” “with.”

Ո—: **ՀՅՋ:** “from,” “from with.”

ՀՈՒՒ—: **ՔՃՈ:** “till,” “up to,” “to,” “as far as.”

Ո—: **ՃԻ:** “in proportion to.”

ՈՄՄԴ-ՀԻՐԱ: and **Ո—ՄՈՒՀՆՔԴ:** “for the sake of,” “on account of,” “because of.”

ՈՂՋ: and **Ի—:** **ՈՂՋ:** "on," "upon," "above," "over," "against."

ԳԹՂՈՌ: "beside," "by."

ՈՄՇԻՒԾԱ: and **Ո—:** **ՈՄՇԻՒԾԱ:** "among," "between."

Ի—: ԵՃ: "with," "together with."

ՈՄՄՈՒՅ: and **Ո—:** **ՈՄՄՈՒՅ:** "in proportion to."

Ի—: ՈՓԸ: "without," "excepting."

Ո—: ՃՆԴ: "instead of."

ԴՅԱԾ: and **Ո—:** **ՀՅԱԾ:** "in front of," "opposite."

Instances for illustration:

ՈՓԽՈՒ: "*within him.*"

ՊՂԸ: ՓՄՎ: "*within the country.*"

ՈՈՐԵՐԴ: **ՈՒՐԱ:** "*in the vicinity of London.*"

ԻՓԻՇ: **ՈՒՆ:** "after midday," i.e. "in the afternoon."

ՈՄՄԻՒՅ: "under us."

ԻՌՋՓ: **ՈՄՄԻՒՅ:** "under the table."

ՈՆ: ԱՆՔ: "with or by me."

ԻՆՉՓՈՒ: ԱՆՔ: **ՄՈՐ:** "He came *from (from with)* his master."

ՆՈՒՒ: ԱՆ: **ՃՃՈՒ:** "to this day."

ՆՈՒՒ: ԿՈՒ: ՃՃՈՒ: "till to-morrow."

ՈՒԾՔ: ՃԻՒ: "in that measure," i.e. so large &c. as that.

ՈՄՄԻՇՐԴՒՅ: "on thy account," "for thy sake."

ՈԾՋ: **ՄՈՒՇՐԴԻ:** "because of his son."

ՈՒԾՔՓՈՒ: "*round about him.*"

ՊՂԸ: ԱԾԸՔ: "*in the environs of (round about) the town.*"

ՈՃՄՄՈՒ: ՖԱՐ: "he went *before them.*"

ՈՄՋԸ: ԱԲ: "on the earth."

ԻՌԴԻ: ՈՂՋ: "above his house."

ՈՈՒՃ: ՀԹՂՈՌ: "by the side of the place."

ՈՇԴՄՍ: ԱԲ: **ԴՆՎ:** "He rose *against* the king."

ՈՌՈՒՔ: ՄՇԻՒԾԱ: "among men."

ՈՆՄ: ՈԾՐԻ: ՄՇԻՒԾԱ: "between me and him."

ԻՌԴԻ: ԵՃ: ՖԱՐ: "He went *with* his father."

ՈՓՓԻ: ՄՈՄՅ: "in proportion to his knowledge."

Մ-ԱՐՓՈՒ: ԻԾՄԻ: ՈՓԸ: ՃՃՃՈՒ: "They all write *excepting* him."

ՈՆ: ՃՆԴ: ՃՓՈՂՓՈՒ: "He receives it, *instead of* me."

ՈՌԴԻ: ՀՅԱԾ: "opposite the house."

CHAP. VII.

ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

1. The *Amharic Conjunctions* are either Separable or Inseparable.

2. The *Separable Conjunctions* are as follows:

(a) *Copulative*, and *Reiterative*: ይግባኝ: "also," "again."

(b) *Adversative*, ተን፡: "however," "but."

ይር፡	}	{"notwithstanding,"
የነር፡ ተን፡			"but."
ይር፡ ተን፡	}	{"nevertheless."
እንደኛ፡			"but," unless."

(c) *Disjunctive*:

ወይ፡	}	{"either—," "or—":	
ወይም፡			"or."
ወይም፡			with Negation, "neither."

(d) *Causal*: እንዳለ፡: "that." እንዳለ፡: "in order that," "in order to."

(e) *Conditional*, እንዳሁን፡ (Shoa, እንዳለ፡) "if."

(f) *Conclusive*, በላይ፡: "therefore."

3. The *Inseparable Conjunctions* are these:

(a) *Copulative*, —ና፡ —ቁ፡: "and," "also."

ከ—፡ ተ—፡: "and," "by," (in counting).

(b) *Copulative* and *Adversative*: —በ፡ —በ፡: "as for," "but," "indeed," "but."

(c) *Conditional*:

በ—፡	}	With the Negative እ፡ (በ፡) "if not," "unless."	
በ—፡			"if."
በ—፡			

(d) *Conjunction of time*, ተ—፡: "when," "while."

Negat. ተ—፡: "ere," "before," "without."

(e) *Final and Conditional*: እንዳለ፡—፡: "that," "if," "to," "in order that."

(f) *Intensive*, እስከ፡—፡: "so that," "so as to."

እስከ፡—፡ የጋብ፡: "until," "till."

(g) *Comparative*, ተ—፡: "than that."

(h) *Causal*, —ቁ፡: "for," "because."

Note.—The junction of these Particles to Verbs is effected according to the rules laid down in Part I. Ch. VII.

ILLUSTRATIONS:

ንትመች፡ ነገመች፡ መጠጥ፡ ፌዴግዴ፡ “The king *and* the queen came *and* went.”

ይር፡ ለሚልታቻ፡ ተቀሙበ፡ “But their servants remained”; or,
ለሚልታቻ፡ ጥን፡ ተቀሙበ፡

መተ፡ ክፍመስ፡ “One hundred and fifty.”

እርስ፡ ዝግባው፡ እንደሆ፡ ለለች፡ “He *also* told me so.”

ይህ፡ ሁሉ፡ ተደዋቸ፡ “*Notwithstanding* all this.”

ይህን፡ እልማም፡ የነበ፡ እንድ፡ “I do not want this, *but* that.”

ወጪ፡ ተፈልጋለሁ፡ መጽሐፍ፡ ወይስ፡ በኩረ፡ “What doest thou want, the book *or* the money?”

ወይስ፡ ይህን፡ ወይስ፡ ይህን፡ ማተዳደግ፡ “Either this *or* that must thou do (*art thou to do*).”

**እርስስ፡ እንደ፡ ፌዴ፡ እየሁ፡ ንብ፡ ጥን፡ እንደታከት፡ እል
ፌዴም፡** “Indeed, *that* he has gone, I have seen; *but* in order *that* thou shouldst be lazy, he did not go,” (“was not his object in going”).

እማር፡ ካንድ፡ (or **ልማር፡**) **እወደለሁ፡** “I like *to* learn.”

መጽሐፍ፡ ባንክ፡ በወደድሆ፡ “I should like *to get* a book.”

ዝተማወች፡ ባዝተማረ፡ ይገኛልሆ፡ “If thou learnest, that will be better for thee *than if* thou playest.”

እንተ፡ በተለዋዕ፡ እርስ፡ በስተሁ፡ ንብ፡ “If thou wouldest ask, he would give thee.”

ንታወ፡ በቀሙት፡ ለሚለ፡ ይከፍል፡ “While the master remains, the servant goes.”

እስከመበ፡ ይረስ፡ ወይልች፡ “Wait for me *till* I come.”

መሞተትስ፡ እመመለሁ፡ “As for coming, I shall come.”

እንተ፡ “But thou?” (emphatic, “what wilt thou do?”)

ታምቀል፡ እያመመግም፡ “Because he is sick, he does not come.”



CHAP. VIII.

ON THE INTERJECTIONS.

1. We notice first those Particles which, when combined with the Verbs **ଖାନ୍ତି**: **ଖରଦାନ୍ତି**: and **ଖାପିତି**:, constitute Verbs (See Ch. V. 2.); but when used by themselves, are Interjections. They are the following :

Particles	Signification.	Particles	Signification.	
ଖମ୍ବ :	of silence,	{ "tush!" "quiet!"	ଖାଲି :	of compliance, { "yes," "readily."
ଫଳ :	of caution,	{ "mind!" "softly!"	ଖମ୍ବି :	of refusing, "I will not!"
ତାମ :	of haste,	"quickly!"	ଖାଇବା :	of exultation, { "hurrah!" "huzzah!"
ତାତାତି :	of completion	{ "done!" "finished!" "full!"		

2. The remaining Particles of Exclamation are as follows:

ଉଦ୍ଧ :	of address, "oh!"	କୁଳ :	{ of commis- ration, } "oh!"
ଫଳ :	of expulsion, "begone!"	ଓପି :	{ "alas!" "woe!"
ଖାଲି :	of joy, "eh!" "aha!"	ଫଳ :	{ of lamentation & abhorrence, } "woe!" "alas!" "fie!"
ଖାଲି :	of attention, { "look!" "behold!"	ଉଦ୍ଧାର :	{ of asto- nishment } "oh wonder!"
ଖରଦାନ୍ତି :	{ contradiction, complaint, } "oh!" "far be it!"	ଓପି :	{ "dear me!"
ଖରଦାନ୍ତି :	abhorrence, "fie!"		
ଖାପିତି :	{ of courtesy, of address, } "Sir!" "O Lord!"		
ଖାପିତି :	{ of assent, } "to be sure!" "no doubt!"		
ନାହିଁ :	{ of sudden sympathy, } "I hope you have not hurt yourself!" <i>lit.</i> "substi- tute," i.e. I should have preferred the accident to have happened to me, instead of you!		

PART III.—SYNTAX.

ON THE ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS,
AND THEIR
CONSTRUCTION INTO SENTENCES.~~~~~
CHAP. I.ON THE NATURE OF SENTENCES, ESPECIALLY IN THE AMHARIC
LANGUAGE.

1. A *sentence* is an aggregate of words expressing a judgment of the mind. It is either simple, complex, or compound. The constituent parts of every sentence are, a subject, an attribute, a copula, and an object; the latter, however, being less necessary than the three former. *Simple* sentences are such as have nothing but these parts; *e.g.*

ጥምር፡ በሂ፡ ፈጥ፡ “The earth is spacious.”

ንግሥ፡ መጠ፡ “The king has come.”

እንበሳ፡ ዲረሰኑ፡ ገዢ፡ “The lion killed a horse.”

NOTE.—The Copula, or Joining Verb, which connects the subject with the attribute, is frequently joined with the latter in one and the same verb; *e.g.* **ንግሥ፡ መጠ፡** Here **መጠ፡** contains the attribute of **ንግሥ፡** (“king”), which is, “one that came,” together with the Copulative Verb “is.”

2. *Complex* sentences are such as are amplified by qualifying words in connection with either the subject or the attribute; *e.g.*

አቶ፡ ከዚ፡ መጠ፡ “My son came to-day.”

Here is the subject, **አቶ፡** “son,” qualified by the pronoun **ዚ**, “my,” and the attribute “who came,” (contained in the verb **መጠ፡** “came,” with the copula “is,”) by the adverb **ከዚ፡** “to-day.”

3. Compound sentences are such as have either the subject, or the attribute, or the object, or all of them, augmented by additional or explanatory parts; *e.g.*

ወታደርቃ፡ ካጋድ፡ ገብረም፡ የሚጠቅሙ፡ ክፍቅ፡ ፈጥዎ፡

“The soldier, the merchant, and the farmer, are useful men.”

CHAP. II.

ON THE SUBJECT AND THE ATTRIBUTE, AND THEIR RELATION TO EACH OTHER.

SECTION I.—*On the Subject.*

1. The *subject* is the principal or the reigning part of every sentence: it therefore stands always in the *Nominative Case*: e.g.

ՌՈՒ: ՃՎՄԴԱ: “man dies.”

2. The ideal subject is always a Noun Substantive: the grammatical subject may be a Substantive, Adjective, Numeral, Pronoun, an Infinitive, or Participle: for words which express no perfect ideas by themselves, i.e. which are not substances, cannot form subjects of thought, unless they be at least ideally converted into substantives.

3. In every sentence, the subject precedes; the attribute and the copula follow; e.g.

ՀԱՐԻ: ՃՍԴ: ՆՈՒ: “He is good.”

This is always the case, whether the Subject be simple, defined, complex, or compound.

4. When the Subject is specified by a Substantive, an Adjective, a Numeral, Pronoun, or Participle, the specifying words precede; e.g.

ԲՌՈՒ: ԸՆ: ԻԳԴ: ՆՈՒ: “Man's heart is evil.”

ՈՒ: ՌՈՒ: ՃՌՈՇԱ: “A good man is honoured.”

ՌԴՐԴ: ՔՅ: հԱՃ: “Seven days passed.”

ՃՍ: ՌԴ: ՌՃ: ՆՈՒ: “This house is spacious.”

ԲՏՎՃ: ՌԴ: ՌՃ: ՆՈՒ: “The house which has been built, is spacious.”

ՆԳԻՆՈՒԵՅՑ: ՄՈՃՃ.Դ: ԻՂԴԴ: ԵՃ: ՃՍԴ:

“May the fear of the Lord be with you.”—2 Chron. xix. 7.

5. A Compound Subject, which consists of several Nouns, Numerals, or Pronouns, has all these parts in the Nominative Case; e.g.

ԻՄՊԵ: ՊՈՃԿ: ՔԾԱԾՈՒ: “Heaven and earth shall pass away.”

ՀՃՔ: ՄՈՒ: ԻՌՄՊԵՅՔ: ՌՈՒԴ: ԾԱԾՈՒ: “Those hundred and eighty men have gone.”

6. Where the Subject is connected with subordinate explanatory parts, it follows after them; e.g. Luke xii. 47.

**የጥቃት፡ ፈቃድ፡ እውቅ፡ የወጥኑን፡ እንደ፡ ፈቃድም፡
የለጻረን፡ ገርም፡ እናገ፡ ይገረፈል፡**

Literally: "His Lord's will knowing who prepared not himself, according to his will and did not the servant, much shall be scourged;" i.e. "That servant who knew his Lord's will, and prepared not himself, neither did according to his will, shall be severely scourged."

These two rules, No. 4, and 6, are so peculiarly in the Amharic idiom, that they cannot fail to impress themselves at once upon the mind of the Student.

SECTION II.

On the Attribute, and its relations to the Subject.

1. The Attribute may be a Substantive, or an Adjective, or Pronoun, or Participle: it may be separate, or implied in the Verb.

EXAMPLES.

እግዥአብኬር፡ መንፈሰ፡ ካወ፡ "God is a Spirit."

ይህ፡ በወ፡ እዋቅ፡ ካወ፡ "This man is intelligent."

ዝነሩ፡ ይህ፡ ካወ፡ "The matter is this."

ፈቃድ፡ የተቀረበ፡ ካወ፡ "His resolution is decided." Acts xix. 7.

ስዕቅም፡ እውራ፡ ሁሉት፡ ካወ፡ "And the men were twelve."

እርጥ፡ ይፈጸል፡ "He fears," i.e. "is fearing."

2. Complex Attributes (see Ch. I. 2.) have their subordinate parts before them.

EXAMPLE.

ይህ፡ በወ፡ በወው፡ ሁሉ፡ ተንተላች፡ ካወ፡

Lit. "This man, in his work all, is cunning"—"is cunning in all his doings."

3. The Attribute always follows the Subject. This is evident from the preceding instances.

4. It often agrees with the Subject in Gender, Number, and Case: often does not. As to the Gender, the concordance may be assumed, most of the Nominal forms being of Common Gender; and, in the Adjective Participles at least, the Gender is strictly attended to. Concerning Number, the Singular is more used in Adjectives than the Plural; which may be accounted for by the supposition, that they are regarded as an abstract mass, of which the individual subjects have their share; e.g.

እሉሁ፡ በወች፡ ይህም፡ ተቃዋሚ፡ "These men are good."

But when the Attribute is a Relative Participle, it must agree in Number,

as well as in Gender, Case, and Person, (see Page 73.) with its subject; e.g.

አለልች፡ የታመት፡ ፊጥዎ፡፡ “His servants are faithful.”

The Number is especially uncertain, when the Subject is a Collective Noun; e.g.

ስዎ፡ ሁሉ፡ ይሞታል፡ “All men (or every man) dies.”

አዝቦ፡ ተሰበሰበች፡ (Sing.) or **ተሰበሰቦ፡** (Pl.) “The people was (or were) gathered together.”

With regard to Case, we remember but one instance where the Subject and the Attribute do not agree; **ብቻ፡** with Suffixes; e.g.

እኔ፡ በታም፡ ካኝ፡ “I am alone.”

Here is the Subject **እኔ**: in the Nominative, and the Attribute **በታም**: in the Accusative Case.

~~~~~

### CHAP. III.

#### VARIOUS USES AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE NOUN.

##### A. *Construction of Substantives with Substantives.*

1. Two or more Substantives connected together, denoting the same thing, are in a state of apposition, and must agree in Gender and Number; e.g.

**እግዥእብዳር፡ እምላክ፡** “The Lord God.”

**ወንድ፡ ጥርጋ፡** “a man-slave.”

**ገንዘብ፡ ዴቃት፡** “King David,” & **ዲቃት፡ ገንዘብ፡** “David, the king.”

**ሻንጂለች፡ ገረቶ፡** “Negroes,” “slaves”; i.e. “Negro-slaves.”

2. Nouns of *Quantity* are joined to other Substantives in the Nominative Case; e.g.

**ጥዋት፡ በር፡** “a little silver.”

**አንድ፡ ንጥረ፡ በን፡** “one pound (of) coffee.”

**አንድ፡ ንጥረ፡ ወን፡** “one jar (of) water.”

3. Substantives of *Quality*, of *Origin*, or of *Possession*, are joined to other Substantives. They stand in the Genitive Case; e.g.

**የደንብያ፡ በታ፡** “a house (made) of stone.”

**የጠራ፡ መበታ፡** “Tèff-bread-cakes.”

**ያገር፡ በዎ፡** “a man of the country”; or the Ethiopic expression,  
**ባለገር፡**

**የገባ፡ መጋጥ፡** “the farmer’s plough.”

More about this when we come to speak of the Genitive Case. (See p. 167.)

4. On the construction of Object-Substantives with Subject-Substantives we shall speak when coming to consider the Verb. (See Ch. VIII.)

B. *Construction of Adjectives with Substantives.*

Adjectives may be connected with Substantives, (a) either as epithets to the Subject; or (b) as Attributes of the sentence; or (c) as modified by another accompanying Substantive.

1. As *Epitheton* of a Substantive, the Adjective generally *precedes* the latter; e.g. ብቃ፡ ተወ፡ “a good man.”

2. In Number and Gender, the Epithetic Adjective does not always agree with its Substantive; but the following rules are observed:

(a) The Substantive may be in the Plural, and the Adjective in the Singular Number; never the reverse; e.g.

ጋዢ፡ መጽሐፍ፡ “good books”; never ይህም፡ መጽሐፍ፡

(b) In the same manner, the Adjective is most frequently used in the Masculine form, when the Substantive is of Feminine Gender; but a Feminine Adjective is never used for a Masculine Substantive; e.g.

ከድ፡ በታ፡ “a bad woman,” but not ጥጋክት፡\* ወንድ፡ “a pure man.”

3. The preceding paragraph refers not to Participial Adjectives of the Relative form, as in them the strictest attention is paid both to Number and Gender. (See Page 163. §. 4.)

4. When the Adjective is *attribute* to the sentence, the rules laid down in the preceding Chapter, Sect. II. §§ 3, 4. obtain.

5. When another qualifying Substantive is connected with the Adjective, a Relative Participle is required as complement; e.g.

በልግዕ዗፡ እያሳን፡ የል፡ በወቅ፡ “Men who are pure in their hearts.”

C. *Number of Nouns.*

There is a strong tendency in the Abyssinians to use the Singular Number, where we would use the Plural. We shall point out several cases where the latter never, and others where it but seldom is used, although it would be impossible, in the present stage of our knowledge of the

---

\* We do not quote ካይናት፡, the Feminine form of ካይ፡, because it is not used in the Amharic, nor the Participle የካይናት፡; because, when Adjective-Participles are used, the Gender and Number is always strictly attended to. (See the preceding Chap. Sect. II. § 4.)

Amharic language, to give rules for every case, and would exceed the bounds which must be assigned to this head. The following classes are, some of them, never, others, seldom used in the Plural:

1. Nouns denoting a mass; as, gold, silver, corn, wheat, honey, fat, dust, &c.

2. Several parts of the animal body; e.g.

|              |              |              |          |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|----------|
| <b>ልብ</b> :  | "the heart." | <b>մշ</b> :  | "flesh." |
| <b>ՄՔ</b> :  | "the belly." | <b>ՔԴԸ</b> : | "hair."  |
| <b>ՔԳԱ</b> : | "blood."     |              |          |

3. The soul, and several powers and faculties of the mind:

|              |             |              |            |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|------------|
| <b>ነፍስ</b> : | "the soul." | <b>ՕՖ</b> :  | "love."    |
| <b>ՃՓԲ</b> : | "the will." | <b>ՃՓԸ</b> : | "charity." |
| <b>ՀՈՒ</b> : | "thought."  | <b>ՔՈՅ</b> : | "joy."     |
| <b>ԺՈՒ</b> : | "reason."   | <b>ՀՈՅ</b> : | "hope."    |

4. Most Abstract Nouns, denoting quality, condition, action, quantity. We especially refer to the two Tables of Nominal Forms. Table I: Trilateral Radices of Verbs, No. 5. and Quadrilateral ones of No. 4. Table II: Simple Forms of 3. A. a. 4. 6.; and Augmented Forms, 1. a. c.; some of d.; and almost all of e.

5. The following Collective Nouns are not often used in the Plural:

(a) Generical names of animals and of plants; e.g.

|              |          |              |           |
|--------------|----------|--------------|-----------|
| <b>Ջ-Ռ</b> : | "hyæna." | <b>ՀՈՊ</b> : | "flower." |
|--------------|----------|--------------|-----------|

(b) Names of assemblages of men, or other beings; e.g. **ՈՂՅ**: "tribe," "sect," "kind," &c. The Plural of this word, **ՈՂՅՔ**: signifies the individuals belonging to the whole assemblage. **ՈՂԴ**: "court of justice," **ՀԿ**: "town," "country," and other words.

6. Certain periods of time: **ՓԵ**: "day." **ՆԵՐ**: and **ԾՆԵՐ**: "night." **ՈՒՐ**: "hour." **ՓԵՐ**: "noon." **ՀՎԵՐ**: "forenoon." These are never used in the Plural number. Seldom: **ԴԱ**: "time." **ԽՈՎ**: "time," "period." **ՀՄԵՐ**: "year." **ՈՒՐԿՆԵՐ**: "week."

7. Several Nouns denoting confines, borders, shores, &c.; e.g. **ՔԸ**: "banks," "shores," "coast." **ՔԸԹ**: "borders." **ՓՈՅ**: "confines," "borders." **ԽԸ**: "seam," "hem."

8. As to the agreement in Number between Nouns in the same sentence, either Subjects or Attributes, see the preceding Chapter, Sect. II. 4.; and in this Chapter, A. 1. and B. 2.

#### D. On the Various Cases of Declension.

1. The *Nominative* is, in common conversation, often improperly used

where the Preposition ቅድ: should stand; e.g. አንጻላል፡ ሲድ፡ "He went Angollala," omitting ቅድ፡ "to."

2. It is applied in answer to the question, How long? How often? How much? e.g.

**የጥኑ፡ ቅን፡ ተቀመጥ፡** "He remained three days."

**ብዕ፡ ገዢ፡ መጠ፡** "He came many times."

**አንድ፡ መድገት፡ ገብስ፡** "One mādēga (a certain measure) barley."

3. The Genitive Case expresses:

(a) *Possession*:

**ያጥ፡ በጥ፡** "My father's house." **የንገሥ፡ ዘይል፡** "The king's power."

(b) *Origin*:

**የጥምድር፡ ፍር፡** "The fruit of the earth."

**የአበባ፡ በወ፡** "A man of (from) Abyssinia," i.e. "An Abyssinian."

(c) *Quality*:

**የብረት፡ እቅ፡** "Iron furniture." **የደንብ፡ በጥ፡** "A house of stone."

Here it supplies the place of Adjectives.

(d) *Measure of time, space*:

**የሰባጥ፡ እመት፡ በፋ፡** "The work of seven years."

**የሁለት፡ ቅን፡ መሬታም፡** "Two days' journey."

(e) *Price and Quantity*:

**የንድ፡ በር፡ በን፡** "One dollar's (worth) of coffee."

4. When Prepositions precede the word which stands in the Genitive Case, the **የ**: is dropped. See Part I. Ch. VII. 3. B.

5. When an Accusative follows the Genitive, the latter adopts the mark **ን፡** of the former, so that the word seems to stand both in the Genitive and in the Accusative; e.g.

**የተረጋ፡ ከተመ፡ እሩሁ፡** "I have seen the capital of the country."

**የእግዚአብሔርን፡ የምላሽሁን፡ ስም፡ ከንተ፡ እታድርጊው፡**

"Thou shalt not use the name of the Lord thy God in vain." Ex. xx. 7.

6. When the Genitive belongs to several Substantives in apposition, its **የ**: is to be applied to each; when to a Substantive preceded by an Epithetical Adjective, it is applied only to the Adjective; e.g.

**የዳቃቃ፡ የንገሥ፡ የነበረ፡ መዘመ-ሪ.ጥ፡** "The Psalms of David, (of) the King, and (of the) Prophet."

**የጀሁፍ፡ በወ፡ ካር፡** "The words of a good man."

7. When the Genitive belongs to a Substantive having several Epithetic

Adjectives, the **P:** is applied to each Adjective, and may, or may not, be applied to the Substantive also; e.g.

**የታለቂያ፡ የወጪ፡ የባለጠቃም፡ የሰላም፡ በተ፡ መቅድስ፡**

or **የታለቂያ፡ የወጪ፡ የባለጠቃም፡ አለም፡ በተ፡ መቅድስ፡**

"The temple of the great, wise, and wealthy Solomon."

8. The Ethiopic Genitive, or Status Constructus, has been mentioned, Part II. Ch. I. Sect. I. 4. and Sect. V. 2.

9. The *Dative* being formed by the prefixion of the Preposition **አ፡ (to, for, in favour, in behalf, &c.)** to the Noun, we need only to refer to what has been said, Part II. Ch. VI. 2. e.

10. The *Accusative Case* is formed by the annexion of **ን፡ at the end:** it serves to indicate the immediate or direct action of the Subject upon its object; and is required by all Active, Intensive, Transitive, and Causative Verbs; e.g.

**በዕለም፡ ለዚህ፡** "He sent a man."

Although this rule is very plain, it may not be superfluous to specify it a little. The Accusative is governed—

(a) By the Verb Finite; e.g.

**መልካትን፡ ይጽናል፡** "He writes a letter."

**ተግብርን፡ እደረገ፡** "Do thy business."

**በትኩን፡ ይዘ፡ ጠኩ፡** "He took his stick, and went."

(b) By the Infinitive; e.g.

**በነው፡ በሸ፡ መስራት፡ እያወቂዣም፡** "He knows not to perform (cannot perform) good works."

(c) By Relative Participles; e.g.

**ያህን፡ የደረሰ፡** "He who has done this."

**ልደን፡ የሙዴያ፡** "He that loves his child."

(d) By Nominal Active Participles; e.g.

**በተ፡ ወሬ፡** "One that builds a house."

11. Besides Active Verbs, there are a few phrases in which the Accusative is used; e.g.

**መንገድ፡ እሳይለሁ፡** "I go my way."

**በተ፡ ገዛ፡** "He entered his house."

**በታ፡** "alone," "single," with Suffixes, assumes the Accusative form, when it is converted into an Adverb; e.g.

**በታው፡ ነበሩ፡** "He was by himself."

12. When the Noun which stands in the Accusative terminates in a

letter of the third, fourth, fifth, or seventh order, a euphonic **ՈՒ:** is joined before the accusative **Դ:**; e.g.

**ԹՊՓՈՒՅ:** **ՄԱԴՐՈՒՅԹ:** **ՈՀՈՒՅԹ:** **ՓՈՎՈՒՅԹ:** **ՀՐՍՒ:**

"I saw the herdsman, the herd, the oxen, and the fox."

12. Relative Participles in **ւ**, standing in the Accusative, have a euphonic **ԴՒ:** before the accusative **Դ:**; e.g.

**ՔԲՍՒԴՅ:** **ԲՇԽՈՒԴՅԹ:** **ՈՀ:** "The ox which I saw, and which they killed."

13. Accusative Nouns ending in the sixth order are euphonically changed into the second; Accusative Participles, into the first order; the latter receiving a euphonic **ՈՒ:**; e.g.

**ՄԱԴԻՄՈՒՅ:** **ՀՋՒ:** "good wine."

**ՔՋԵՂՍՈՒՅ:** **ՅՈՒՆԴ:** "The sin which thou hast committed."

14. When a Descriptive Adjective is connected with the Noun standing in the Accusative, the **Դ:** is not generally affixed to both, but sometimes to the Substantive, sometimes to its epitheton; when the latter is a Participle, to the Participle; e.g. it is equally good to say **ՔՍՄ:** **ՈՈՒՅ:** or **ՔՄՎՈՒՅ:** **ՈՈՒ:** "a good man," but with a Participle; e.g.

**ԲՈԼԱՌՈՒՅ:** **ՆՅԱՋ:** "The bread which thou (*f.*) hast eaten."

15. When several Adjectives are connected with a Substantive in the Accusative Case, the **Դ:** is put to each of the Adjectives, but not to the Substantive; e.g.

**ՏՂՓՅ:** **ՈՒՅԾ.ՄՈՎՈՒՅԹ:** **ՈՒ:** **ԿԱՅՅԹ:** **ԲՊՄԴԱԾՈՒՅ:** **ԿԱ:**  
**ՓԱՀՈՒ:** "They cut down a large, thick, and good-fruit-bearing tree," i.e.  
"a large and thick tree which bore good fruit."

16. Concerning the construction of the Genitive with the Accusative, see §. 5.

## CHAP. IV.

## ON THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

1. The Amharic Language has almost the same mode of comparing things with each other as the Hebrew; namely, especially by prefixing the Preposition **ከ**: "of," "from," to the Positive Noun or Pronoun; e.g. **ከመታዴት፡ መሙር፡ ይጠላል፡** "Learning is better than to be idle."

2. In many cases, they add the Postpositive Particle **ደልቻ**: which gives, however, no additional force to the idea of gradation already expressed by **ከ፡;** but it stands generally at the end of a sentence, and is used more for Verbs than for Adjectives; e.g.

**ይህጥ፡ ካፍ፡ ተረዝማለኝ፡ ከዘምጥ፡ ደልቻ፡**

"This tree is tall, more than that one."

Here it would be equally good to say,

**ይህጥ፡ ካፍ፡ ከዘምጥ፡ ተረዝማለኝ፡** "This tree is taller than that one."

3. The Verbs **በለብ**: "is greater," **ከንስ**: "is smaller," "less," and **ተጠላ**: "is better," are in themselves of a comparative nature: nevertheless, when brought together with other Adjectives or Verbs for comparison, they require the **ከ—**: as well as Adjectives or other Verbs; e.g.

**ጥብብ፡ ከተብብ፡ ይጠላል፡** "Wisdom is better than wealth."

**ዘመን፡ ከእያወጥ፡ ይጠልጣል፡** "An elephant is larger than a mouse."  
**አጭነላል፡ ከአንበባ፡ ተጠላቸ፡** "Angollala is smaller than Ankobar."

4. Besides the preceding, every verb of quality, condition, or even of action, is capable of expressing a comparison when constructed with **ከ**: for the adjective is contained in that verb; e.g.

**ተረሱ፡ ከካፍ፡ ይረዝማል፡** "A mountain is higher than a tree."

**ጃጠልት፡ ከሞት፡ ተከራፈለኝ፡** "Sin is worse than death."

Verbs of action, however, require **ደልቻ**: e.g.

**ከአዋሪ፡ ደልቻ፡ እውጭ፡ ይከሏል፡** "Paul laboured more than Peter."

5. The Superlative is rendered by **ከሁሉ፡** (with Suffixes) and **ከሁሉ፡ ደልቻ፡** e.g.

**መድር፡ ተለቻ፡ ፍት፡ ዓለም፡ ይጠልጣል፡ እግዢሳብር፡ ጥ፡**  
**ከሁሉ፡ ይጠልጣል፡** "The earth is great; the universe is greater; but God is greatest (of all)."

**ከሁሉቸ፡ ደልቻ፡ እርም፡ ተማሩ፡** "He learned more than they all."



CHAP. V.  
ON THE NUMERALS.

1. The Numeral does not, properly speaking, form a particular part of speech, but is either, as the Cardinals, a Substantive, or, as are the Ordinals, an Adjective, or, as the Distributive, an Adverb. We need therefore to say but little about their Syntax.

2. The Cardinal Numbers are always, when connected with other Nouns, to be considered as in apposition with them; and they always precede; e.g.

**Ա-ԼԴ:** ՌՈՒ: "two men."

3. All the Numbers, from One upwards, seem to be considered as Plurals; wherefore they are of common gender, except ՀՅԱ: "one," which has in the feminine, ՀՅԱՐԴ::

4. Notwithstanding this, the noun to which the numeral is joined, is not always used in the plural number. Although they use, in common language, the singular and the plural indiscriminately, the rule seems to hold good, that the round numbers, ten, twenty, &c. up to a hundred, and the large numbers, as hundred, thousand, ten thousand (ՀՃԱ: *μύριοι*), are more frequently constructed with the noun in the singular than in the plural, and the numbers between every ten generally in the plural; e.g.

**Ա-ԼԴ:** ՌՈՒ: "two men."      **ՍՔ:** ՌՈՒ: "twenty man."

5. The Numbers ՍՔ: ՄԱԴ: ՀԸՆ: ՀԳՄՈՒ: ՌԵՇ: ՌՈՒ: ՌՈՒՇ: ԽՈՒ: ՄՈՒ:: are generally used for Ordinals as well as for Cardinals; or rather, as they do not like to adopt the ordinal form for those numbers, they place the cardinal behind the noun as a predicate; e.g.

**ՍՈՑԻԿԱ:** ՍՔ: "book twenty," instead of ՍՔՇ: ՍՈՑԻԿԱ: "the twentieth book."

6. The form of the Ordinal Numbers is regularly derived from the Cardinals; except, as in our European and in other languages, the first; although in compound numbers that also is used in the regular form; e.g.

**ՀԱՄԱ:** ՀՅԱՐԴ: "the eleventh."

When used in a simple form, ՀՅԱՐԴ: signifies "unique," "sole," "only." In enumeration, they use ՍՈՑՄԱԾ: "the beginning," or ՃՐԴ: "the foremost," "first."

7. As for the Distributives, nothing needs to be added to what has been said Part II. Ch. II. §. 4.



CHAP. VI.

## SYNTAX OF THE SEPARABLE PRONOUNS.

- ### **1. The Separable Personal Pronoun is used,**

(a) When it is the subject of a sentence. **እኔ**: **እኔምለሁ**: "I go," although it is not necessary to use it.

- (b) When an emphasis lies on the pronoun; e.g.

እርተ፡ እለደንበው-ም፡ እኔ፡ እደጋግዢ-ት፡ እንደ፡

**“He has not done it, but I have.”**

2. The third person singular and plural is used for demonstration; as is the reverse in the Latin and Greek; e.g.

**ՀԱՅ: ՔԸՆԿ: ՀԸՆԻ: ԽՈՒ: ՔԸՆ-Ս:** “That which thou hast now  
been telling me, is the same with what I told thee.”

3. The Separable Possessive Pronoun is used only when a stress is laid upon it; e.g. **எு**: **நட**: **பல**: **இஓ**: "This house is mine."

Cf. John xvii. 9, 10: Υπάτε: τοῦτον· εἰπώτω: ρωτήσετε: οὐτέ: ἀκριβῶς: οὐτέ: ιδε: τοῦτον· δύσκετε: οὐτέ: ιδε: "For they are Thine. And

all that is mine, the same is Thine; and Thine, the same is mine." Where no such stress lies on the Possessive, Suffixes are used.

4. The Singular Masculine of both the *Demonstrative Pronouns* forms Adverbs, by the junction of Prepositions with the Genitive Case of those Pronouns. See Part II. Ch. V. 4. (b).

5. The *Interrogative* սպէ՛: "who?" "which?" "what?" is used for persons: it is made use of, also, for inanimate subjects in the phrase սպէ՛: նՈՒ: ՈՄԾՎ: or ՈՄԾՎ: սպէ՛: նՈՒ: (սՊՆՈՒ:.) "What is his (its) name?" On the contrary, the Impersonal զա՞: is employed as a Personal Interrogative, by way of utter contempt, in the expression, զա՞: ՀՂԴՒ: "What is his father?" Both these expressions are elliptical.

6. The Indefinite **U-Λ:**, which may be considered, as it is in the other Semitic languages, as a Noun, **U-Λ:** (אֶלְיָהוּ) with suffixes, assumes no other suffix in the singular than the suffixes masculine and feminine of the third person; but it takes all the suffixes of the plural: **U-Λ: U-ΛΨ: U-ΛΤΦ: U-ΛΤΨ: U-ΛΤΞ:**

7. When **U-Γ**: is absolute, it stands at the beginning of a sentence: when connected with Nouns or Participles, it follows them; e.g.

**ԱՌ: ՓԵՔ:** “All is gone.”

**ԱՌՅՈՒԹԻՒՆ:** ՀՐԱՄԱ: “He has done all.”

**ՈՅՌ: ԱՌ:** “All men,” “every man,” “people in general,” &c.

8. **Ա-Ռ:**, as subject of the sentence, and without any other suffixes, may have its verb either in the singular or in the plural: when connected with nouns or participles, or with other suffixes, the number and person of the verb are determined by those nouns, participles, or suffixes; e.g.

**Ա-Ռ: ՔԹԳՃ:** "All will (sing.) perish"; or,

**Ա-Ռ: ՔԹԳՃ:** "All will (plur.) perish."

**Ա-ՂԻՇ: ՊՅԲ: Խ:** "We are all together."

**ՂԱՄԴԴ-Ա-Ռ: ՏՈՒՈՒՈՒ: Ա-ՂԻՓ-ՊՄ: ՒՓԴ:** "All the kings were assembled together, and all of them engaged in war."

9. **ՀՅՁՒՒ:** "some," "something," "any thing"; with negation, "nothing"; e.g.

**ՀՅՁՒՒ: ՈՄՓՈՒ:** "Give him something."

**ՀՅՁՒՒ: ՀՃԵՎՈԾԱ-ՊՄ:** "I received nothing."

10. **ՀՔՃ:** signifies an indefinite number or quantity; e.g.

**ՀՔՃ: ՈՓՒՒ: ՔԹԿԻՒՃ: ՀՔՃ: ՊՅԸ.ԹՀՈՒՃ:**

"Some men believe; others doubt it."

When it is predicate, it signifies a large quantity:

**Ի-ՊՒ: ՀՔՃ: ՆՈՒ:** "His property is considerable."

11. In order to express Reciprocity, the Abyssinians make use of the form **ՀՀՈՒ: ՈՀՈՒ-:**, with the Plural Suffixes **աՒՇ: աՒՍ:** and **աՒՓՈՒ:** and a Reciprocity or other Verb; e.g.

**ՀՀՈՒ: ՈՀՈՒՓՈՒ: ՒՓՀԸ:** "Love one another!"

12. An Indefinite Pronoun is **ՀԴԻՇ:** which signifies, "The what's his name." Gr. ὁ δεῖνα; French, chose; German, Dingerich; e.g.

**ՀԴԻՇ: ՀՃԵՎՈԾԱ-ՊՄ:** "The what's his name does not go."



## CHAP. VII.

### ON THE AFFIXED PRONOUNS.

1. As to their position, that is determined, the Nominal Suffixes being joined to the final letter of the Noun (or Adverb); the verbal to the last radical of the Verb, or to the Verbal Afformative. Adjectives do not assume suffixes, except when considered as Substantives.

2. The Nominal Suffixes are to be considered as possessive; the verbal ones as objective; e.g.

**ԱՐ:** "My child."

**ԾՈՒՇ:** "He struck me."

Adverbs with Suffixes are treated by them as Substantives, the nominal Suffixes being joined to them; e.g.

**ብለድ:** "over me."

3. Concerning the Verbal Suffixes, enough has been said in the preceding part of this work, Ch. IV. sect. V. We add here, that the suffix of the first pronoun in the singular is sometimes used pleonastically; e.g.

**ብሔር፡ን፡** "I am gone."

## CHAP. VIII.

### CONSTRUCTION OF THE VERB.

Having discussed the nature and use of the Verb, and its various parts, rather extensively in the preceding part of this work, Ch. IV., we need not here go through it at full length; but shall offer, in the first place, such additional remarks on the Moods, Tenses, and Persons, as are deemed necessary; and, in the second place, to show the agreement of one verb with another, and of the verb with the other parts of speech.

#### SECTION I.

##### *On the Tenses of the Amharic Verb.*

1. The following Tenses are used for the *past* time: the Simple Preterite of the Indicative, the Compound Preterite of the Contingent, and the Compound Preterite of the Constructive.

(a) The Simple Preterite of the Indicative is used,

a. For the Perfect Tense; e.g.

**አንዋድ፡ መደት፡** "A stranger has arrived."

**አዝቦ፡ ተሰበሰባ፡** "The people have gathered themselves together."

b. For the Historical Tenses, the Imperfect and Pluperfect; e.g.

**ነጥረረም፡ በወረዳ፡ ገዢ፡ ተስተላቻ፡ በዘ፡ እሳዣ፡**

"And when he descended from the mountain, many people followed him."

Matt. viii. 1.

**ተእዘዘዘ፡ ከፈጻመ፡ በኋላ፡ ከዘም፡ እለፈ፡**

"When he had finished his command, he passed over from thence."

Matt. xi. 1.

γ. For the Present or Immediate Future, in a very few instances. So when visitors courteously ask leave to go, they do it by saying: **ብሔርሁ፡** "I am gone," i.e. "If you allow me, I go now." Or when a person is

frequently called, and does not come, he at last answers : **መፋህ፡ መፋህ፡**  
“I come ! I come !”

3. With Conjunction Prefixes, it serves for the Potential and Optative Moods.—See Sect. II. §. 5. and Isa. i. 9.

(b) The Compound Preterite of the Contingent is used,

a. For the Imperfect and Pluperfect of the Indicative ; e.g.

**እኔ፡ ተፈመዣ፡ እርጥቶው፡ ይበላ፡ የበሩ፡** “Before I came, they had been eating.”

b. For the Imperfect and Pluperfect of the Potential Mood :

**ብጥለዋዣነው፡ በጥጥሁ፡ ንበር፡** “If thou wouldest ask him, he would give thee.”

**ይህንን፡ ካላደረገሁ፡ በወደድሁ፡ ንበርሁ፡** “If thou hadst not done this, I should have loved thee.”

(c) The Compound Preterite of the Constructive is used chiefly for the Pluperfect, and sometimes for the Imperfect of the Indicative ; e.g.

**ስጥቻ፡ ንበርሁ፡** “I had given.”

2. Tenses used for the *Present*, are, the Present of the Indicative ; the Second, or Aoristic Constructive ; and the Contingent with Conjunctions.

(a) The Present Indicative and the Aoristic Constructive are both used for the Present Indicative ; e.g.

**እርጥ፡ ተፈዣጥዋል፡ እኔ፡ ክፍ፡ እለለሁ፡**  
“Whereas he is talking, I keep silence.”

(b) The Present Indicative is used for both the Present and the Future tenses : the Aoristic Constructive serves especially for an action, condition, state, or suffering, which *continues* ; and therefore, although it is more frequently used for the Present, it is likewise made use of for the Perfect. This peculiarity of both these forms is owing to the Auxiliary Verb Substantive **እል** : with which they are composed.

(c) The Simple Contingent Mood serves for the Present as well as for the Future Tenses, when connected with Particles ; e.g. the Participles **የሙዣም፡** “he that comes ;” **የሙዣ፡** “when he comes ;” **የደሙዣ፡** “before he comes ;” Negative assertions : **እደሙዣም፡** “he comes not,” “will not come ;” Conditional expressions : **በሙር፡** “if he end,” or “if he ends ;” Final and referential : **እንደጋኝ፡** “that he writes” or “write ;” Final : **ለወጣ፡ ተኑሱ፡** “he rose to go out,” where it is for an Infinitive ; **ወቃድሙና፡ ይደግ፡ ክዘድ፡ ፍሳድ፡** “He went to assist (that he might assist) his brother.”

3. The *Future* time is generally expressed by the same forms which serve for the Present, except the Aoristic Constructive. Vide 2. a.—In p. 66 of this work we pointed out another mode of a decidedly future form; besides which they make use of the Contingent with **እል**: or with **ደረግል**: The one is found in the negative expression, Ezek. xvii. 9: **ብሔድ፡ ደሙዝ፡ የለምን፡ ፈጋዥ፡ ደዋጥ፡ ደዋጥ፡ የለምን፡** “Shall not its root be extracted; and its fruit, shall it not be cut off?” But these two latter forms are not confined to the Future: they are also used for the Present Tense.

## SECTION II.

### *On the Moods of the Amharic Verb.*

On this head, we shall add but little to what has been stated Chap. IV. of the preceding part, and in the preceding Section of this Chapter.

1. The *Contingent* serves for the Indicative, Subjunctive, Potential, and Participial Moods; as is shown in the preceding Section.

2. The *Subjunctive* expresses a desire, or an indirect request, order, command, or obligation.—See p. 72.

3. The *Infinitive*, as Verbal Noun, assumes Nominal Suffixes; but relates to and acts upon other nouns in a verbal capacity; e.g.

**አንገሥ፡ መተዘዘ፡** “My obeying the King,” “my being obedient to the King.”

It is, however, likewise constructed as a Noun; e.g.

**የኩርስተ፡ መፈመጥ፡** “The coming of Christ.”

**ፋይ፡ ለማፍራ፡ ተተክለ፡** “In order to bear fruit was it planted.”

4. The *Participles* are of the same character, partaking of the nature of Adjectives (as the Infinitive does of the nature of Nouns), and of the Verb, as has been shown in the preceding Part, pp. 72, 73. The Simple forms, however, have more of a nominal; the Augmented forms more of a verbal character. The Augmented forms are verbally flexible through all the persons; besides their being capable of receiving Prepositions, and the Accusative **ን**: marking them as Nouns. **አብ፡ የለም፡ በወ፡ እንደ፡ ገዢ፡ የለው፡ ክሳ፡ መለወች፡ እያወደም፡** “A man of a *determined* character does not like to change his word *which he once has spoken.* **ፋይ፡ ለሞ፡ ደብ፡ ይለዋል፡ ካር፡ ክመዘሩት፡ ደል፡** “The gatherer of the fruit rejoices, more than *those that sowed the seed.*”

5. There is in the Amharic Language no peculiar form for the Optative Mood: they express it by circumscription; e.g.

**በሆነ፡ ትስተማሪሁ፡ በወደሆሁ፡** “If it had been, if thou hadst instructed me, I should have liked it.”

## SECTION III.

*Construction of the Verb with the other parts of the Sentence.*

1. The Amharic Verb having all the personal forms connected with it, it is capable of including the subject in itself; e.g.

**ሙጥ:** "he observed."    **ሙታሁ:** "thou hast beaten."

And by the aid of Suffixed Pronouns and Prepositions, it is further capable of expressing a whole sentence in itself; e.g.

**ሙጠባሁ:** "He came upon thee."    **ሙታሁዎ:** "Thou hast struck him."

2. But when, as is more usual, the subject is separate from the Verb, the latter should agree with it in gender, number, and person; e.g.

**ይህን፡ ቤት፡ እተኩለያሁ:** "This woman does not go."

**ስላልች፡ ተስተላለት፡** "His servants followed him."

3. Collective Nouns, however, which admit of a Plural, have the Verb sometimes in the Singular, sometimes in the Plural: e.g.

**አዝቦ፡ ተስበሰቦኝ፡** "The people gathered itself together"; or

**አዝብ፡ ተስበሰቦ፡** "The people gathered *themselves* together."

4. When there are more than one subject in a sentence, the Verb stands either in the Third Person of the Plural, or it is determined by what is considered as the chief subject; e.g.

**ወንድና፡ ቤት፡ መጠ፡** "Male and female came."

**ሂሳሙና፡ ዘረዋቱ፡ ተመጥ፡** "The king and his army were beaten."

When the person who is addressed forms one of the subjects, the Verb follows in the Second Person Plural; e.g.

**ከዳና፡ ጉባሩም፡ እንተም፡ ሲታማሩ፡ ፈቃሁ፡**

"Kiddan, Gabru, and thou, (you) are to learn."

When the speaker is included, the Verb is to be in the First Person Plural:

**እርስተውና፡ እና፡ ተለዋነ፡** "They and we are separated."

5. When the subject consists of several Infinitives, the number is not multiplied, and the Verb is used in the singular; e.g.

**መመቅደ፡ መስራት፡ ይጠቀማል፡** "Learning and working is useful."

But when the subject consists of several Participles, which are considered as Nouns, the Verb must be in the plural; e.g.

**ስራዋና፡ ገዢ፡ መጠባቸው፡** "A thief and a murderer came upon him."

6. Active and Transitive Verbs have their objects in the Accusative

▲ ▲

Case: see Ch. III. 10. Transitive and Causative Verbs may have a double Accusative; e.g.

**መልኩትን፡ አስፋዱው፡** “He caused him to write a letter.”

But as these Verbs may sometimes be used as Intransitive, the use of Prepositions is frequently applied; e.g.

**ፈርሱት፡** “He judged over (or against) him.”

**ጽሑፍ፡** “He wrote in it.”

**በወጥ፡ አስመጣለት፡** “He caused a man to come *for* (or *to*) him.”

7. Intransitive Verbs are generally connected with their objects by Prepositions; e.g.

**በቤት፡ ክበሩ፡** “He was in the house.”

**ወደገኝ፡ ሲያ፡** “He went to his country.”

**በወጪበሩ፡ ተቀሙበ፡** “He sat upon his chair.”

8. When the object of the sentence is another Verb, that is expressed by the Infinitive, or by the Contingent with Conjunctions; e.g.

**መመር፡ ይውሉል፡** “He likes to learn”; or,

**ይመር፡ ዘንድ፡ ይውሉል፡** “He likes that he may learn.”

**መደግም፡ የወቃል፡** “He can read.”

9. The reigning Verb should be always at the end of the sentence, whether the object be simple, or complex, or compound; e.g.

**ስዎ፡ የልወደደዎች፡ ካር፡ እያደረግም፡**

“What man does not like, he will not perform.”

**እግዢአብዕር፡ በተሳካሁ፡ የከላከለዎች፡ ካር፡ ስዎ፡ የደረሰል፡**

“What God in His law has prohibited, man does commit.”

**በኢዋሕእብዕር፡ ቅል፡ እናምን፡ ዘንድ፡ በጀመራታቸውም፡**  
**እኔን፡ የጥበ፡ ክርክተብ፡ የሰራዎች፡ መደረጃዎት፡ በሂደማዊት፡**  
**እኔዋባል፡ ዘንድ፡ ውጤል፡ የስተዋዣፈል፡** “The Gospel teaches us to believe in the Word of God, to repent of our sins, and to receive in faith the Salvation which Christ has wrought out for us.”

## CHAP. IX.

### CONSTRUCTION OF THE REMAINING PARTS OF SPEECH.

As the doctrine of the Particles, i.e. Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections, has been pretty fully exhibited in the Etymological Part, Ch. V. to Ch. VIII., we do not think it necessary to add any more: and so we finish here the Amharic Grammar, adding only a few Specimens of Common Conversation, and a few Exercises.

## PART IV.

SOME SPECIMENS OF CONVERSATION,  
AND  
A FEW EXERCISES.

## 1. CONVERSATIONAL MODES OF SALUTATION.

In conversation, the Abyssinians are very polite towards each other, without using quite such a bombastic style as is common among the Arabs and other Eastern nations. When speaking of the Pronouns and under the Verb, we have mentioned two honorific distinctions for the second person in the singular, and that they speak of a third person of respect in the plural. A neglect of these distinctions is overlooked in foreigners, whilst learning their language; but amongst themselves it is taken as an offence, except with intimate friends, and in a few other instances. In saluting, the various times of the day, the state of health, frequency of intercourse, season of the year, and some other circumstances, are to be regarded as determining the mode of address.

As for the time of the day when persons meet, four times are distinguished, for which four separate Verbs are used; viz. (a) The *morning*, until the sun has finished half his course from the horizon to the meridian, i.e. between nine and ten o'clock A.M. During this time, when meeting, the verb አደረ፡ “to spend the night,” “to rest,” is used in the Preterite: when parting, the verb ጥፈቻ፡ “to spend the forenoon,” አስፈፈለም፡ “to make spend the forenoon,” or ΦΛ፡ “to spend (አΦΛ፡ “to make spend) the middle of the day,” in the Imperative or Subjunctive Mood. (b) The *forenoon*, from about nine to eleven o'clock A.M. At meeting, they salute each other with the verb ጥፈቻ፡ “to spend the forenoon,” in the Preterite: when parting, with the Verb ΦΛ፡ or አΦΛ፡ (c) *Noon* and *afternoon*, to sun-set. When meeting, they use ΦΛ፡ in the Preterite: when parting before five P.M., አΦΛ፡ when after five, the Subjunctive of አገመጻ፡ “to make pass the evening,” or Imperative or Subjunctive of መጻ፡ “to pass the evening.” (d) *Evening* and *night*, from sun-set to the first break of the day. When meeting, the Preterite of መጻ፡ when parting, either the Subjunctive or the Imperative of አደረ፡ “to pass the night,” “to rest,” or Subjunctive of አጥፍ፡ “to make pass the night,” &c. is used.

ያመር፡ “May He (i.e. God) be gracious!” and የዕቅዑ፡ “May He heal,” “restore!” both with Suffixes, is used for addressing sick persons. The former wish also is used when a person sneezes. ገብ፡, in the Preterite, is used when meeting a person who has newly arrived at the place: in the

Subjunctive with Suffixes, when parting with a person who goes to another country. በንበት: "to pass the time from one interview to another," is used in the Preterite, when persons meet who have not seen each other for some time. እስከበት: "to make pass &c., is used at parting, when they do not expect to meet again for a considerable time. Then they add, የገኘች: "May He bring us together again!" ክረመ: "to pass the rainy season," and እስከረመ: its transitive, is used in the same manner.

The following Specimens of Conversation will illustrate the preceding remarks. We choose the imaginary meeting of the servant Gabru, with his master Kiddana Maryam, after his return from an errand to a friend, Aito Malku, who lives in a distant part of the country. The meeting is supposed to take place in the morning.

K. M. የሆኑ: ገዢና: ገብሩ: Hast thou arrived in health (safely &c.), Gabru?

G. እግዢእብአር: ይመስተኞ:: ይህ:: በንበትና: ቤታዊ:: God be praised! Have you, master, been well all the time since I saw you last?

K. M. እግዢእብአር: ይመስተኞ:: ይህ:: በንበትና: እንተ:: Thank God! Hast thou been all the time well?

G. እግዢእብአር: ይመስተኞ:: እርስዎ:: ይህ:: እው:: Thanks to God! Are you well?

K. M. እግዢእብአር: ይመስተኞ:: ይህ:: ተመዝግች:: ቅጽ:: እስራ:: Thanks to God! I am well. Hast thou had a good journey?

G. መዝግድ: ቅጽ:: ክዘሁ: ተንመች: በየሰነት: ቅጽ: ይረስዎ:: ክዘሁ: ይምሮ: እንደ:: ቅጽ: ውስጥ: ቅጽም: ተመለስዎ:: በሀሳት: ቅጽም: ተነሳ: ገባዎ:: I had a good journey. I arrived there in three days after I had started from hence, and staying there one day, I returned, and in two days and a half arrived here.

K. M. ፍጤያር: ይለሳ: እዳታ: መልከት:: What does Aito Malku say?

G. ይህፈተኞ: "Are you well? Are you well? Are you well? Are you well? Have you been quite well since our last interview? Are you well? Have you passed the rainy season well? My friendship amounts to heaven and earth," he said.—What you sent to him

ኩድግም፡ ደስ፡ አሳብት፡ እና  
እኩብፏር፡ ደስወው፡ እግዢእብብ  
ቂር፡ ደስወው፡ እግዢእብብቂር፡  
ያመስገኘው፡ አል፡

K. M. ጉድይሰ፡

G. እነ፡ አድራሻዋለሁ፡ አል፡

K. M. በት፡ አሁንም፡ ፍዴጥ  
ህን፡ በደተሁ፡ ወደ፡ ታመሙኬ፡  
በት፡ ወደ፡ ወለተ፡ ጉባርእል፡  
አድኬ፡ እግዢእብብቂር፡ ደማ  
ሪ፡ እግዢእብብቂር፡ ደፈወስታ፡  
ዘረ፡ ቅዱት፡ አልቀልልጻምን፡  
በልልኝ፡

G. እነ፡ አድሮች፡

K. M. እነ፡ በይህፍ፡ የወ  
ልህ፡

G. በይህፍ፡ የወልሁ፡ (ወል፡)

I delivered, and he was very glad of it, and said, "May God give it (reward) you! May God give it you! May God glorify you!" (i.e. I am very much obliged to you.)

But how is (what did he say to) my request?

He agreed to do it.

Very well. Now eat thy dinner, and go to Walleta Gabriel, a sick woman, and (give her my respects, and tell her that I sympathize with her in her illness) say for me, "May God have mercy on thee, and restore thee! Doest thou not feel a little better to-day?"

Very well. I go then.

Very well. (Mayest thou spend the middle of the day well!) Good bye!

(May you spend the middle of the day well!) Good bye!

TASFU, another servant, enters, announcing a visitor.

Tasfu. አድቶ፡ ወልደ፡ ድንግል፡  
አል፡ ለገዢኝ፡

K. M. እነ፡ ደግቡ፡

There is Aito Walda Dengel:  
Shall he come in?

Yes, let him come.

On entering, KIDDANA MARYAM attempts to rise; but AITO WALDA DENGEL hastens to prevent it; saying, ደንጋጋ፡ ደንጋጋ፡ "Remain remain!" or as usual :

በእግዢእብብቂር፡ በሚርያም፡

By God! by Mary! (i.e. Do not rise.)

W. D. እንደት፡ አድራ፡

How have you passed the night?

K. M. እግዢእብብቂር፡ ደመሰ  
ገኝ፡ ደህፍ፡ አድራ፡

Thank God! Have you passed the night well?

W. D. እግዢእብብቂር፡ ደመሰ  
ገኝ፡ ደህፍ፡ ፊልፍ፡

Thank God! Have you passed the forenoon well?

K. M. እግዢሳብዕር፡ ይሙ  
ስተኞ፡ እቻ-ትኞ፡ ይህፍ፡ ገፈደ፡

Thanks to God! Have you passed  
the forenoon very well?

W. D. እግዢሳብዕር፡ ይሙስ  
ገን፡ ቅጂጥውቅ፡ ልቻቻው፡ ሆ-  
ስ፡ ይህፍ፡ ፍጥዎ፡

Thank God! Are your wife and  
all your children well?

K. M. እግዢሳብዕር፡ ይሙስ  
ገን፡ ቅጂጥ፡ ሆራ፡ ታማላቻ፡

Thank God! My wife is poorly  
to-day.

W. D. እድ፡ ሲመማማጥው፡  
ምንድር፡ ካወ፡

Ah! What is her complaint?

K. M. ሆድዋ፡ ይማታል፡

She has pain in the bowels.

W. D. ተስፋ፡

Tasfu!

T. አበታ፡

Sir!

W. D. እግዢሳብዕር፡ ይማረ  
ው፡ እግዢሳብዕር፡ ይፈውስው፡  
በልደች፡ እመረትሆን፡

Speak to thy mistress in my be-  
half; saying, "May God have mercy  
on you! May God restore you!"

T. እሁን፡ ቅቃት፡ ይፈለቻል፡  
ይለፈ፡

She says that she feels now a  
little better.

W. D. እንደሆ፡ የወ-ቁ፡  
በልደቻባጥነው፡ ይስጠ-ች፡

Henceforth, know me (as your  
friend), and give me a Baldaraba\*  
(a man that introduces me to you).

K. M. እስ፡ እንተ፡ ተስፋ፡  
ለደተ፡ ወልደ፡ ይ-ንሳ፡ በመስ፡  
ወተር፡ እድርባጥው፡

Very well. Thou, Tasfu, when-  
ever Aito Walda Dengel comes, do  
thou introduce him.

W. D. ማድ-ሆ፡

I go then.

K. M. እስ፡ በይህፍ፡ የወ-ል፡

Very well. May He make you  
spend the middle of the day well  
*i.e.* Good bye!

W. D. በይህፍ፡ የወ-ል፡

May He make you spend the &c.

K. M. እሙን፡

Amen!

\* See በልደቻባ in the Dictionary.

## 2. A FEW EXERCISES.

~~~~~  
SALVATION.

(See Amharic Spelling Book, p. 20.)

እሱንሰ፡ እኋይ፡ በሆነ፡ አገዛኩበርን፡ Now, as it is thus, all men having
ስውጥ፡ ሁጻ፡ እግዢአብበርን፡ by their sins offended God, and fallen
በሂሳት፡ በድለተቻፍ፡ ከአገ under the divine judgment and eternal
አብበር፡ ፍርድ፡ ከዘላለም damnation, God has opened for
ዶ፡ ከተኞ፡ በታች፡ በፌር፡ እግዢ us another way, a way of Grace,
አብበር፡ ለለዕን፡ የጽግዕኖ፡ when He in His mercy gave His
መንግዶ፡ ከረተደ፤ በታለቅ፡ Beloved Son as a ransom in our
ምህረቱ፡ የተወደደዕዃ፡ ለቻን፡ stead.
በቻ፡ ፍንታ፡ በኅ፡ እድር፤ በስ
መዋ፡ ገዢ፡

BEST USE OF GEOGRAPHY.

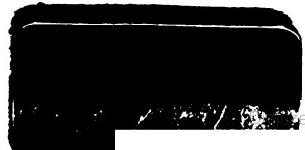
(See Preface to the Amharic Geography.)

ይህንን፡ በጣም፡ ባጥሚር፡ If thou learn this (Geography)
በበት፡ ተቀምጧሁ፡ ወደ፡ ፲ቁ፡ perfectly, thou wilt, even whilst re-
እነዚ፡ እኋይማዳቸው፡ በወ፡ ተሆ maining at home, become like a
የለሁ፡ በቀድሞም፡ ስማጥቶን፡ man that goes into a distant coun-
እኋነት፡ ያልሰማሁዎን፡ እስከባብ፡ try: and of nations, whose very name
መፍሪያዎን፡ መግጥዎንም፡ thou didst not hear before, thou
ስለጥዎንም፡ ጥብረጥዎንም፡ wilt find here their residences, their
ነክሱ፡ ታገኘለሁ፡ ሁለተዕሙ፡ nature, employments, their state and
ወንድሞኝሁ፡ ፍጥዎ፡ ሁለተ conditions. And all these are thy
ወሙ፡ ታላቅኝሁ፡ ታኩኝ፡ በል brethren; all of them, great and
የተኝኝሁ፡ እረዳጥኝሙ፡ በነኝ፡ little, civilized and barbarians, good
ከፍቅርሙ፡ አመድኝሁ፡ የባጥሁ፡ and evil, are thy relations, the sons
የድም፡ ለቻኝ፡ እውቀጥዎ፡ ተ of Adam, thy father. Know them,
መፍጠጥዎ፡ ስለጥዎንም፡ learn of them; and examine into
መጠመር፡ የጥጋገኘጥዎንም፡ their works. Whatever thou findest
በት፡ ከር፡ መጠቀ፡ ከከፍም፡ good in them, keep, and flee from
በሽ፡ ሁለተዕሙ፡ ወንድ፡ evil. Love them all, as God wills
ነፍስሁን፡ ተወደ፡ ከንድ፡ እግዢ፡ that thou shalt love thyself. But
አብበር፡ እኋይማሻ፡ ከሆነዎ፡ above all things, ask thyself, saying,
ደልቅ፡ እኋይ፡ ባለሁ፡ ከፍስሁን፡

ጥጥ:: እግዢሳብኬ:: ስል:: “ Wherefore has God created me ?
ምንድር:: ፌጋራ:: የእግዢሳ
ብኩርም:: ፌቃድ:: በእ:: ዘንድር:: “ What is the will of God with me ?
ነው:: እናም:: እንደተ:: እፈጻሚ
ለሁ:: የእግዢሳብኩር:: ፌቃድ:: “ and how do I accomplish the will
የጥንድር:: ነው:: የእግዢሳብኬ:: “ of God ? What is the will of God
ፌቃድ:: በአዝቦ:: በወገኖችም:: “ concerning my people and nation ?
እናም:: የአበባ:: ሰው:: እንደ “ And we, the people of Abyssinia,
ለሁ:: የጥንድር:: ነው:: የጥንድር:: “ do we perform what God requires
እናም:: የአበባ:: ሰው:: እንደ “ us to do ? And if we have not
ለሁ:: የጥንድር:: ነው:: የጥንድር:: “ done it, what is our duty henceforth
እናም:: የጥንድር:: ነው:: የጥንድር:: “ to do ? ” If thou askest in this
መጠቃቅ:: ቅድስ:: በማም:: ይሙ manner, the Holy Scriptures will
ልበዳቁ:: ቅድስ:: በማም:: ይሙ satisfactorily answer thee. Hear
ተነተለዋም:: them, and follow them !

THE END.

LONDON :
 PRINTED BY RICHARD WATTS, CROWN COURT, TEMPLE BAR.



Digitized by Google

